

HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC

Form N-2

April 15, 2010

Table of Contents

As filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 15, 2010

Securities Act File No. 333-

# U.S. SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

## FORM N-2

REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

(Check appropriate box or boxes)

Pre-Effective Amendment No.

Post-Effective Amendment No.

## HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL, INC.

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in charter)

400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310

Palo Alto, CA 94301

(Address of Principal Executive Offices)

Registrant's Telephone Number, including Area Code: (650) 289-3060

**Manuel A. Henriquez**

**Chief Executive Officer**

**Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc.**

**400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310**

**Palo Alto, CA 94301**

(Name and address of agent for service)

***COPIES TO:***

**Cynthia M. Krus**

**Steven B. Boehm**

**Sutherland Asbill & Brennan LLP**

**1275 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.**

**Washington, DC 20004**

**APPROXIMATE DATE OF PROPOSED PUBLIC OFFERING:**

As soon as practicable after the effective date of this Registration Statement.

If any securities being registered on this form will be offered on a delayed or continuous basis in reliance on Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered in connection with a dividend reinvestment plan, check the following box.

It is proposed that this filing will become effective (check appropriate box):  when declared effective pursuant to section 8(c).

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

<b>Title of Securities Being Registered</b>	<b>Amount Being Registered<sup>(1)(3)</sup></b>	<b>Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Amount of Registration Fee<sup>(4)</sup></b>
Common Stock, \$0.001 par value per share	13,000,000	\$ 141,635,000	\$ 4,233

## Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

- (1) Pursuant to Rule 416, this registration statement also covers such additional shares of our common stock as may be issued by reason of stock splits, stock dividends or similar transactions.
- (2) Estimated solely for purposes of calculating the amount of the registration fee pursuant to Rule 457(c) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, based upon the average of the high and low prices of our common stock as reported on the Nasdaq Global Select Market on April 14, 2010.
- (3) In reliance upon Rule 429 under the Securities Act of 1933, all securities unsold under the prospectus contained in such prior registration statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-150403) (a total of 13,000,000 shares of common stock) are carried forward into this registration statement, and the prospectus contained as a part of this registration statement shall be deemed to be combined with the prospectus contained in the above-referenced registration statement, which has previously been filed.
- (4) Previously paid \$4,233.

**THE REGISTRANT HEREBY AMENDS THIS REGISTRATION STATEMENT ON SUCH DATE OR DATES AS MAY BE NECESSARY TO DELAY ITS EFFECTIVE DATE UNTIL THE REGISTRANT SHALL FILE A FURTHER AMENDMENT WHICH SPECIFICALLY STATES THAT THIS REGISTRATION STATEMENT SHALL THEREAFTER BECOME EFFECTIVE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SECTION 8(A) OF THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR UNTIL THE REGISTRATION STATEMENT SHALL BECOME EFFECTIVE ON SUCH DATE AS THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION, ACTING PURSUANT TO SAID SECTION 8(A), MAY DETERMINE.**

## **Table of Contents**

**The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

PROSPECTUS (Subject to Completion)

, 2010

### **13,000,000 Shares Common Stock**

This prospectus relates to the offer, from time to time, of 13,000,000 shares of our common stock, par value \$0.001 per share by us.

The shares of common stock may be offered at prices and terms to be described in one or more supplements to this prospectus. We may offer shares of common stock at a discount to net asset value per share in certain circumstances. On June 3, 2009, our common stockholders voted to allow us to issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share for a period of one year ending June 3, 2010. Sales of common stock at prices below net asset value per share dilute the interests of existing stockholders, have the effect of reducing our net asset value per share and may reduce our market price per share.

We are a specialty finance company that provides debt and equity growth capital to technology-related companies at various stages of development from seed and emerging growth to expansion and established stages of development, which include select publicly listed companies and lower middle market companies. We primarily finance privately-held companies backed by leading venture capital and private equity firms and also may finance certain publicly-traded companies that lack access to public capital or are sensitive to equity ownership dilution. We source our investments through our principal office located in Silicon Valley, as well as additional offices in the Boston and Boulder. Our goal is to be the leading structured debt financing provider of choice for venture capital and private equity-backed technology-related companies requiring sophisticated and customized financing solutions. We invest primarily in structured mezzanine debt and, to a lesser extent, in senior debt and equity.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio total return by generating current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity-related investments. We are an internally-managed, non-diversified closed-end investment company that has elected to be treated as a business development company under the Investment Company Act of 1940.

Our common stock is traded on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol HTGC. On April 14, 2010, the last reported sale price of a share of our common stock on the Nasdaq Global Select Market was \$10.96. The net asset value per share of our common stock at December 31, 2009 (the last date prior to the date of this prospectus on which we determined net asset value) was \$10.29.

**An investment in our common stock may be speculative and involves risks including a heightened risk of total loss of investment. In addition, the companies in which we invest are subject to special risks. See Risk Factors beginning on page 13 to read about risks that you should consider before investing in our common stock, including the risk of leverage.**

Please read this prospectus before investing and keep it for future reference. It contains important information about us that a prospective investor ought to know before investing in our common stock. We file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information about us with the Securities and Exchange Commission. The information is available free of charge by contacting us at 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301 or by telephone calling collect at (650) 289-3060 or on our website at [www.herculestech.com](http://www.herculestech.com). The SEC also maintains a website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov) that contains such information.

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

**This prospectus may not be used to consummate sales of shares of common stock unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.**

**The date of this prospectus is                      , 2010**

**Table of Contents**

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus. We have not authorized any dealer, salesperson or other person to provide you with different information or to make representations as to matters not stated in this prospectus. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. This prospectus is not an offer to sell, or a solicitation of an offer to buy, any shares of common stock by any person in any jurisdiction where it is unlawful for that person to make such an offer or solicitation or to any person in any jurisdiction to whom it is unlawful to make such an offer or solicitation. The information in this prospectus is accurate only as of its date, and under no circumstances should the delivery of this prospectus or the sale of any common stock imply that the information in this prospectus is accurate as of any later date or that the affairs of Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc. have not changed since the date hereof. This prospectus will be updated to reflect material changes.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
<u>Summary</u>	1
<u>Fees and Expenses</u>	9
<u>Selected Consolidated Financial Data</u>	11
<u>Risk Factors</u>	13
<u>Forward-Looking Statements: Market Data</u>	38
<u>Use of Proceeds</u>	39
<u>Price Range of Common Stock and Distributions</u>	40
<u>Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u>	43
<u>Business</u>	65
<u>Portfolio Companies</u>	78
<u>Senior Securities</u>	92
<u>Sales of Common Stock Below Net Asset Value</u>	93
<u>Management</u>	97
<u>Control Persons and Principal Stockholders</u>	127
<u>Certain Relationships and Related Transactions</u>	129
<u>Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations</u>	130
<u>Regulation</u>	138
<u>Determination of Net Asset Value</u>	143
<u>Dividend Reinvestment Plan</u>	144
<u>Description of Capital Stock</u>	145
<u>Plan of Distribution</u>	152
<u>Brokerage Allocation and Other Practices</u>	153
<u>Custodian, Transfer and Dividend Paying Agent and Registrar</u>	153
<u>Legal Matters</u>	153
<u>Experts</u>	153
<u>Available Information</u>	154
<u>Index to Financial Statements</u>	F-1

Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc., our logo and other trademarks of Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc. mentioned in this prospectus are the property of Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc. All other trademarks or trade names referred to in this prospectus are the property of their respective owners.

**Table of Contents**

**ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS**

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission using the shelf registration process. Under the shelf registration process, which constitutes a delayed offering in reliance on Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, we may offer, from time to time, up to 13,000,000 shares of our common stock on the terms to be determined at the time of the offering. Shares of our common stock may be offered at prices and on terms described in one or more supplements to this prospectus. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the shares of our common stock that we may offer. Each time we use this prospectus to offer shares of our common stock, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. A prospectus supplement may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. Please carefully read this prospectus and any such supplements together with the additional information described under **Where You Can Find Additional Information** in the **Prospectus Summary** and **Risk Factors** sections before you make an investment decision.

A prospectus supplement may also add to, update or change information contained in this prospectus.

## Table of Contents

### SUMMARY

*This summary highlights some of the information in this prospectus and may not contain all of the information that is important to you. For a more complete understanding of this offering, we encourage you to read this entire prospectus and the documents that are referenced in this prospectus, together with any accompanying supplements. In this prospectus, unless the context otherwise requires, the Company, Hercules Technology Growth Capital, we, us and our refer to Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc. and our wholly-owned subsidiaries.*

### Our Company

We are a specialty finance company that provides debt and equity growth capital to technology-related companies at various stages of development from seed and emerging growth to expansion and established stages of development, which include select publicly listed companies and lower middle market companies. Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio total return by generating current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity-related investments. We are an internally-managed, non-diversified closed-end investment company that has elected to be treated as a business development company under the Investment Company Act of 1940.

As of December 31, 2009 our total assets were approximately \$509.0 million, of which, our investments comprised \$370.4 million at fair value and \$380.4 million at cost. Our investments at fair value were comprised of our debt investments, warrant portfolio and equity investments valued at approximately \$320.9 million, \$14.4 million and \$35.1 million, respectively, or 63.0%, 2.8% and 6.9% of total assets, respectively. Our total investments at value in foreign companies were approximately \$25.5 million or 5.0% of total assets at December 31, 2009. During the year ended December 31, 2008, we made debt commitments to 40 portfolio companies totaling \$405.7 million and funded \$346.0 million to 56 companies. For the year ended December 31, 2009 we made debt commitments to 21 portfolio companies totaling \$180.7 million and funded approximately \$95.5 million to 28 portfolio companies. At December 31, 2009, we had unfunded contractual commitments of \$11.7 million to 5 portfolio companies. Since inception through December 31, 2009, we have made debt and equity investments in excess of \$1.6 billion to our portfolio companies.

We primarily finance privately-held companies backed by leading venture capital and private equity firms and also may finance certain select publicly-traded companies that lack access to public capital or are sensitive to equity ownership dilution. As of December 31, 2009, our proprietary SQL-based database system included over 20,000 technology-related companies and approximately 4,800 venture capital, private equity sponsors/investors, as well as various other industry contacts. Our principal executive office is located in Silicon Valley, and we have additional offices in the Boston and Boulder areas. Our goal is to be the leading structured debt financing provider of choice for venture capital and private equity backed technology-related companies requiring sophisticated and customized financing solutions. Our strategy is to evaluate and invest in a broad range of ventures active in the technology and life science industries and to offer a full suite of growth capital products up and down the capital structure. We invest primarily in structured debt with warrants and, to a lesser extent, in senior debt and equity investments. We use the term structured debt with warrants to refer to any debt investment, such as a senior or subordinated secured loan, that is coupled with an equity component, including warrants, options or rights to purchase common or preferred stock. Our structured debt with warrants investments will typically be secured by select or all of the assets of the portfolio company.

We focus our investments in companies active in technology industry sub-sectors characterized by products or services that require advanced technologies, including, but not limited to, computer software and hardware, networking systems, semiconductors, semiconductor capital equipment, information technology infrastructure or services, Internet consumer and business services, telecommunications, telecommunications equipment, and



## **Table of Contents**

media and life sciences. Within the life sciences sub-sector, we focus on medical devices, bio-pharmaceutical, drug discovery, drug delivery, health care services and information systems companies. We refer to all of these companies as technology-related companies and intend, under normal circumstances, to invest at least 80% of the value of our assets in such businesses.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio return by generating current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity-related investments. Our primary business objectives are to increase our net income, net operating income and net asset value by investing in structured debt with warrants and equity of venture capital and private equity backed technology-related companies with attractive current yields and the potential for equity appreciation and realized gains. Our structured debt investments typically include warrants or other equity interests, giving us the potential to realize equity-like returns on a portion of our investments. Our equity ownership in our portfolio companies may represent a controlling interest. In some cases, we receive the right to make additional equity investments in our portfolio companies in connection with future equity financing rounds. Capital that we provide directly to venture capital and private equity backed technology-related companies is generally used for growth, and general working capital purposes as well as in select cases for acquisitions or recapitalizations.

Our portfolio is comprised of, and we anticipate that our portfolio will continue to be comprised of, investments in technology-related companies at various stages of development. Consistent with regulatory requirements, we invest primarily in United States based companies and to a lesser extent in foreign companies. See Regulation Qualifying Assets. Since 2007, our investing emphasis has been primarily on private companies following or in connection with a subsequent institutional round of equity financing, which we refer to as expansion-stage companies and lower middle market companies. We have also historically focused our investment activities in private companies following or in connection with the first institutional round of financing, which we refer to as emerging-growth companies.

Despite the current capital market disruption and recession, we continue to see a steady pace of new investments by venture capitalists. As a result of this favorable level of venture capital investment activities, we are experiencing an increase in new investment origination activities which commenced in the fourth quarter of 2009, and would expect it to continue to the extent the venture capital community continues to accelerate its own pace of new investments. To the extent that we are able, we intend to seek new investment opportunities; however, we remain cautious and conservative in our investment and credit management strategies and we do not expect to see significant growth in the portfolio until the second half of 2010.

As of December 31, 2009, our investment professionals, including Manuel A. Henriquez, our co-founder, Chairman, President and Chief Executive Officer, is currently comprised of 27 professionals who have, on average, more than 15 years of experience in venture capital, structured finance, commercial lending or acquisition finance with the types of technology-related companies that we are targeting. We believe that we can leverage the experience and relationships of our management team to successfully identify attractive investment opportunities, underwrite prospective portfolio companies and structure customized financing solutions.

### **Our Market Opportunity**

We believe that technology-related companies compete in one of the largest and most rapidly growing sectors of the U.S. economy and that continued growth is supported by ongoing innovation and performance improvements in technology products as well as the adoption of technology across virtually all industries in response to competitive pressures. We believe that an attractive market opportunity exists for a specialty finance company focused primarily on investments in structured debt with warrants in technology-related companies for the following reasons:

Technology-related companies have generally been underserved by traditional lending sources;

## **Table of Contents**

Unfulfilled demand exists for structured debt financing to technology-related companies as the number of lenders has declined due to the recent financial market turmoil;

Structured debt with warrants products are less dilutive and complement equity financing from venture capital and private equity funds; and

Valuations currently assigned to technology-related companies in private financing rounds have decreased since 2008 as a result of the turmoil in the general market and should provide a good opportunity for attractive capital returns.

***Technology-Related Companies are Underserved by Traditional Lenders.*** We believe many viable technology-related companies backed by financial sponsors have been unable to obtain sufficient growth financing from traditional lenders, including financial services companies such as commercial banks and finance companies, particularly due to the recent credit market dislocation and because traditional lenders have continued to consolidate and have adopted a more risk-averse approach to lending. More importantly, we believe traditional lenders are typically unable to underwrite the risk associated with financial sponsor-backed emerging-growth or expansion-stage companies effectively.

The unique cash flow characteristics of many technology-related companies include significant research and development expenditures and high projected revenue growth thus often making such companies difficult to evaluate from a credit perspective. In addition, the balance sheets of emerging-growth and expansion-stage companies often include a disproportionately large amount of intellectual property assets, which can be difficult to value. Finally, the speed of innovation in technology and rapid shifts in consumer demand and market share add to the difficulty in evaluating technology-related companies.

Due to the difficulties described above, we believe traditional lenders are generally refraining from entering the structured mezzanine marketplace, instead preferring the risk-reward profile of asset based lending. Traditional lenders generally do not have flexible product offerings that meet the needs of technology-related companies. The financing products offered by traditional lenders typically impose on borrowers many restrictive covenants and conditions, including limiting cash outflows and requiring a significant depository relationship to facilitate rapid liquidation.

***Unfulfilled Demand for Structured Debt Financing to Technology-Related Companies.*** Private debt capital in the form of structured debt financing from specialty finance companies continues to be an important source of funding for technology-related companies. We believe that the level of demand for structured debt financing is a function of the level of annual venture equity investment activity. In 2009, venture capital-backed companies received, in approximately 2,400 transactions, equity financing in an aggregate amount of approximately \$20.5 billion, representing a 32% decrease from the same period of the preceding year, as reported by Dow Jones VentureSource. In addition, overall, the median round size during in 2009 was \$5.0 million, down from \$7.0 million in 2008. These decreases were primarily a result of contraction of the capital markets experienced during the past year. Overall, seed- and first-round deals made up 18% of the deal flow in 2009, and later-stage deals made up roughly 56% of all capital invested.

We believe that demand for structured debt financing is currently under served, in part because of the credit market collapse in 2008 and the resulting exit of debt capital providers to technology-related companies during 2008 and 2009. In addition, lending requirements of traditional lenders have recently become more stringent due to the significant write-offs in the financial services sector, the re-pricing of credit risk in the broadly syndicated market, and the financial turmoil affecting the banking system and financial market, which have negatively impacted the debt and equity capital market in the United States and most other markets. At the same time, the venture capital market for the technology-related companies in which we invest has continued to be active. Therefore, to the extent we have capital available, we believe this is an opportune time to be active in the structured lending market for technology-related companies.

## **Table of Contents**

***Structured Debt with Warrants Products Complement Equity Financing From Venture Capital and Private Equity Funds.*** We believe that technology-related companies and their financial sponsors will continue to view structured debt securities as an attractive source of capital because it augments the capital provided by venture capital and private equity funds. We believe that our structured debt with warrants product provides access to growth capital that otherwise may only be available through incremental investments by existing equity investors. As such, we provide portfolio companies and their financial sponsors with an opportunity to diversify their capital sources. Generally, we believe emerging-growth and expansion-stage companies target a portion of their capital to be debt in an attempt to achieve a higher valuation through internal growth. In addition, because financial sponsor-backed companies have reached a more mature stage prior to reaching a liquidity event, we believe our investments provide the debt capital needed to grow or recapitalize companies during the extended period prior to liquidity events.

### **Our Business Strategy**

Our strategy to achieve our investment objective includes the following key elements:

***Leverage the Experience and Industry Relationships of Our Management Team and Investment Professionals.*** We have assembled a team of experienced investment professionals with extensive experience as venture capitalists, commercial lenders, and originators of structured debt and equity investments in technology-related companies. Our investment professionals have, on average, more than 15 years of experience as equity investors in, and/or lenders to, technology-related companies. In addition, our team members have originated structured debt, structured debt with warrants and equity investments in over 130 technology-related companies, representing over \$1.6 billion in commitments and have developed a network of industry contacts with investors and other participants within the venture capital and private equity communities. In addition, members of our management team also have operational, research and development and finance experience with technology-related companies. We have established contacts with leading venture capital and private equity fund sponsors, public and private companies, research institutions and other industry participants, which should enable us to identify and attract well-positioned prospective portfolio companies.

We concentrate our investing activities generally in industries in which our investment professionals have investment experience. We believe that our focus on financing technology-related companies will enable us to leverage our expertise in structuring prospective investments, to assess the value of both tangible and intangible assets, to evaluate the business prospects and operating characteristics of technology-related companies and to identify and originate potentially attractive investments with these types of companies.

***Mitigate Risk of Principal Loss and Build a Portfolio of Equity-Related Securities.*** We expect that our investments have the potential to produce attractive risk adjusted returns through current income, in the form of interest and fee income, as well as capital appreciation from equity-related securities. We believe that we can mitigate the risk of loss on our debt investments through the combination of loan principal amortization, cash interest payments, relatively short maturities, security interests in the assets of our portfolio companies, and, on select investments, covenants requiring prospective portfolio companies to have certain amounts of available cash at the time of our investment and the continued support from a venture capital or private equity firm at the time we make our investment.

Historically our structured debt investments to technology-related companies, typically include warrants or other equity interests, giving us the potential to realize equity-like returns on a portion of our investment. In addition, in some cases, we receive the right to make additional equity investments in our portfolio companies in connection with future equity financing rounds. We believe these equity interests will create the potential for meaningful long-term capital gains in connection with the future liquidity events of these technology-related companies.

## **Table of Contents**

***Provide Customized Financing Complementary to Financial Sponsors' Capital.*** We offer a broad range of investment structures and possess expertise and experience to effectively structure and price investments in technology-related companies. Unlike many of our competitors that only invest in companies that fit a specific set of investment parameters, we have the flexibility to structure our investments to suit the particular needs of our portfolio companies. We offer customized financing solutions ranging from senior debt to equity capital, with a focus on structured debt with warrants.

We use our relationships in the financial sponsor community to originate investment opportunities. Because venture capital and private equity funds typically invest solely in the equity securities of their portfolio companies, we believe that our debt investments will be viewed as an attractive and complimentary source of capital, both by the portfolio company and by the portfolio company's financial sponsor. In addition, we believe that many venture capital and private equity fund sponsors encourage their portfolio companies to use debt financing for a portion of their capital needs as a means of potentially enhancing equity returns, minimizing equity dilution and increasing valuations prior to a subsequent equity financing round or a liquidity event.

***Invest at Various Stages of Development.*** We provide growth capital to technology-related companies at all stages of development, from emerging-growth companies, to expansion-stage companies and established-stage companies. We believe that this provides us with a broader range of potential investment opportunities than those available to many of our competitors, who generally focus their investments on a particular stage in a company's development. Because of the flexible structure of our investments and the extensive experience of our investment professionals, we believe we are well positioned to take advantage of these investment opportunities at all stages of prospective portfolio companies' development.

***Benefit from Our Efficient Organizational Structure.*** We believe that the perpetual nature of our corporate structure enables us to be a long-term partner for our portfolio companies in contrast to traditional mezzanine and investment funds, which typically have a limited life. In addition, because of our access to the equity markets, we believe that we may benefit from a lower cost of capital than that available to private investment funds. We are not subject to requirements to return invested capital to investors nor do we have a finite investment horizon. Capital providers that are subject to such limitations are often required to seek a liquidity event more quickly than they otherwise might, which can result in a lower overall return on an investment.

***Deal Sourcing Through Our Proprietary Database.*** We have developed a proprietary and comprehensive structured query language-based (SQL) database system to track various aspects of our investment process including sourcing, originations, transaction monitoring and post-investment performance. As of December 31, 2009, our proprietary SQL-based database system included over 20,000 technology-related companies and over 4,800 venture capital, private equity sponsors/investors, as well as various other industry contacts. This proprietary SQL system allows us to maintain, cultivate and grow our industry relationships while providing us with comprehensive details on companies in the technology-related industries and their financial sponsors.

### **Dividend Reinvestment Plan**

We have adopted an opt-out dividend reinvestment plan through which distributions are paid to stockholders in the form of additional shares of our common stock, unless a stockholder elects to receive cash. See [Dividend Reinvestment Plan](#). Those stockholders whose shares are held by a broker or other financial intermediary may receive distributions in cash by notifying their broker or other financial intermediary of their election.

### **Taxation**

Prior to 2006, we were taxed as a corporation under Subchapter C of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, which we refer to in this prospectus as the Code. We elected to be treated for federal income tax

## **Table of Contents**

purposes as a regulated investment company (a RIC ) under Subchapter M of the Code with the filing of our federal corporate income tax return for 2006, which election was effective as of January 1, 2006. As a RIC, we generally will not pay corporate-level federal income taxes on any ordinary income or capital gains that we distribute to our stockholders as dividends, which allows us to reduce or eliminate our corporate level tax. *See* Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations. To obtain and maintain the federal income tax benefits of RIC status, we must meet specified source-of-income and asset diversification requirements and distribute annually an amount equal to at least 90% of the sum of our net ordinary income and realized net short-term capital gains in excess of realized net long-term capital losses, if any, out of assets legally available for distribution. *See* Distributions. There is no assurance that we will meet these tests and be eligible to make a RIC election. If we do not qualify or do not make a RIC election, we would be taxed as a C corporation.

### **Use of Proceeds**

We intend to use the net proceeds from selling shares of common stock for general corporate purposes, which includes investing in debt and equity securities, repayment of indebtedness and other general corporate purposes. The supplement to this prospectus relating to an offering will more fully identify the use of proceeds from such offering.

### **Leverage**

We borrow funds to make additional investments, and we have granted, and may in the future grant, a security interest in our assets to a lender in connection with any such borrowings, including any borrowings by any of our subsidiaries. We use this practice, which is known as leverage, to attempt to increase returns to our common stockholders. However, leverage involves significant risks. *See* Risk Factors. With certain limited exceptions, we are only allowed to borrow amounts such that our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, equals at least 200% after such borrowing. Our asset coverage for senior indebtedness as of December 31, 2009 was well over 200% since we exclude SBA leverage from this ratio and we have no other borrowings outstanding. The amount of leverage that we employ will depend on our assessment of market and other factors at the time of any proposed borrowing.

We, through a special purpose wholly-owned subsidiary, Hercules Funding II, LLC, entered into a two-year revolving senior secured credit facility with an optional one-year extension with total commitments of \$50 million, with Wells Fargo Foothill as a lender and as an arranger and administrative agent (the Wells Facility ). The Wells Facility has the capacity to increase to \$300 million if additional lenders are added to the syndicate. The Wells Facility expires on August 25, 2011, unless the option to extend the facility is exercised by the parties to the agreement. To date, we have not added any additional lenders under The Wells Facility, but intend to seek to do so when the financial markets reopen.

Borrowings under the Wells Facility will generally bear interest at a rate per annum equal to Libor plus 3.25% or PRIME plus 2.0%, but not less than 5.0%. The average debt outstanding under the Wells Facility for the year ended December 31, 2009 was approximately \$2.8 million and the average interest rate was approximately 5.4%. The Wells Facility requires the payment of a non-use fee of 0.5% annually, which was reduced to 0.3% on the one year anniversary of the credit facility. The Wells Facility is collateralized by debt investments in our portfolio companies, and includes an advance rate equal to 50% of eligible loans placed in the collateral pool. The Wells Facility generally requires payment of interest on a monthly basis. All outstanding principal is due upon maturity, which includes the extension if exercised. We paid a one time \$750,000 structuring fee in connection with the Wells Facility which is being amortized over a two year period. There was no outstanding debt under the Wells Facility at December 31, 2009. In February 2010, the facility was extended an additional year until August 2011 and we paid a \$375,000 extension fee.

## **Table of Contents**

The Wells Facility requires various financial and operating covenants. These covenants require us to maintain certain financial ratios and a minimum tangible net worth of \$360 million. The Wells Facility was amended, effective April 30, 2009, to decrease the minimum tangible net worth covenant from \$360 million to \$250 million, contingent upon our total commitments under all lines of credit not exceeding \$250 million. To the extent our total commitments exceed \$250 million; the minimum tangible net worth covenant will increase on a pro rata basis commensurate with our net worth on a dollar for dollar basis. In addition, the tangible net worth covenant will increase by 90 cents on the dollar for every dollar of equity capital subsequently raised by us. As of December 31, 2009 combined commitments from the Wells Fargo syndicate and the SBA totaled \$ million. The Wells Facility provides for customary events of default, including, but not limited to, payment defaults, breach of representations or covenants, bankruptcy events and change of control. We were in compliance with all covenants at December 31, 2009.

Hercules Technology II, L.P. ( HT II ), our wholly-owned subsidiary, is licensed by the U.S. Small Business Administration ( SBA ) as a Small Business Investment Company ( SBIC ) under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958. At December 31, 2009, we had a commitment from the SBA permitting us to draw up to \$137.1 million from the SBA. The maximum borrowing available from the SBA could be increased to \$150.0 million if we increased our regulatory capital investment by \$6.5 million, subject to SBA approval. At December 31, 2009, we had a net investment of \$68.55 million in HT II, and there are investments in 43 companies with a fair value of approximately \$124.5 million. HT II s portfolio accounted for approximately 33.6% of our total portfolio at fair market value at December 31, 2009.

As of December 31, 2009, the maximum statutory limit on the dollar amount of outstanding debentures guaranteed by the U.S. Small Business Administration ( SBA ) issued to a single small business investment company ( SBIC ) is \$150.0 million. As of December 31, 2009, Hercules Technology II, L.P. ( HT II ), our wholly owned SBIC subsidiary, has regulatory capital of \$68.55 million and a commitment from the SBA to issue debentures up to \$137.1 million, of which approximately \$130.6 million was outstanding as of December 31, 2009. There is no assurance that HT II will be able to draw up to the maximum limit available under the SBIC program. In addition, we are eligible to be approved for a second license which would allow us to draw an aggregate of \$225 million with an additional investment of \$37.5 million of regulatory capital. We submitted our application to obtain a second lender license, and, in February 2010, we responded to the SBA s comment letter relating to our second lender license. We anticipate that the license should be approved during the spring of 2010; however there can be no assurance that the SBA will grant us a second lender license or when the license will be approved.

### **Distributions**

As a RIC, we are required to distribute annually to our stockholders at least 90% of the sum of our net ordinary income and realized net short-term capital gains in excess of realized net long-term capital losses, if any. We are not subject to corporate level income taxation on income we timely distribute to our stockholders as dividends. *See* Certain Material United States Federal Income Tax Considerations. We pay regular quarterly dividends based upon an estimate of annual taxable income available for distribution to shareholders and the amount of taxable income carried over from the prior year for distribution in the current year.

### **Principal Risk Factors**

Investing in our common stock may be speculative and involves certain risks relating to our structure and our investment objective that you should consider before deciding whether to invest. In addition, we expect that our portfolio will continue to consist primarily of securities issued by privately-held technology-related companies, which generally require additional capital to become profitable. These investments may involve a

## **Table of Contents**

high degree of business and financial risk, and they are generally illiquid. Our portfolio companies typically will require additional outside capital beyond our investment in order to succeed or to fully repay the amounts owed to us. A large number of entities compete for the same kind of investment opportunities as we seek.

We borrow funds to make our investments in portfolio companies. As a result, we are exposed to the risks of leverage, which may be considered a speculative investment technique. Borrowings magnify the potential for gain and loss on amounts invested and, therefore increase the risks associated with investing in our common stock. Also, we are subject to certain risks associated with valuing our portfolio, changing interest rates, accessing additional capital, fluctuating quarterly results, and operating in a regulated environment. See **Risk Factors** for a discussion of factors you should carefully consider before deciding whether to invest in our common stock.

### **Certain Anti-Takeover Provisions**

Our charter and bylaws, as well as certain statutes and regulations, contain provisions that may have the effect of discouraging a third party from making an acquisition proposal for our company. This could delay or prevent a transaction that could give our stockholders the opportunity to realize a premium over the price for their securities.

### **General Information**

Our principal executive offices are located at 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301, and our telephone number is (650) 289-3060. We also have offices in the Boston, Massachusetts and the Boulder, Colorado areas. We maintain a website on the Internet at [www.herculestech.com](http://www.herculestech.com). Information contained in our website is not incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and you should not consider that information to be part of this prospectus.

We file annual, quarterly and current periodic reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which we refer to as the Exchange Act. This information is available at the SEC's public reference room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information about the operation of the SEC's public reference room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. In addition, the SEC maintains an Internet website, at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov), that contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information regarding issuers, including us, who file documents electronically with the SEC.

**Table of Contents****FEES AND EXPENSES**

The following table is intended to assist you in understanding the various costs and expenses that an investor in our common stock will bear directly or indirectly. However, we caution you that some of the percentages indicated in the table below are estimates and may vary. Except where the context suggests otherwise, whenever this prospectus contains a reference to fees or expenses paid by you or us or that we will pay fees or expenses, stockholders will indirectly bear such fees or expenses as investors in Hercules Technology Growth Capital.

<b>Stockholder Transaction Expenses (as a percentage of the public offering price):</b>	
Sales load (as a percentage of offering price) <sup>(1)</sup>	%
Offering expenses	%
Dividend reinvestment plan fees	%
<b>Total stockholder transaction expenses (as a percentage of the public offering price)</b>	<b>%</b>
<b>Annual Expenses (as a percentage of net assets attributable to common stock):<sup>(2)</sup></b>	
Operating expenses	5.3% <sup>(3)(4)</sup>
Interest payments on borrowed funds	2.5% <sup>(5)</sup>
Fees paid in connection with borrowed funds	0.5% <sup>(6)</sup>
Acquired fund fees and expenses <sup>(7)</sup>	0.0%
<b>Total annual expenses</b>	<b>8.3%<sup>(8)</sup></b>

- (1) In the event that the shares of common stock to which this prospectus relates are sold to or through underwriters, a corresponding prospectus supplement will disclose the applicable sales load. We will not pay any underwriting discount or commission, and we will not receive any of the proceeds from shares sold by the selling stockholders.
- (2) Average net assets attributable to common stock equals the weighted average net assets for 2009 which is approximately \$373.7 million.
- (3) Operating expenses represent our expenses for the year ending December 31, 2009 including income tax expense (benefit) including excise tax, excluding interests and fees on indebtedness. This percentage for the year ended December 31, 2008 was 5.1%. See Management's Discussion and Analysis and Results of Operations, Management, and Compensation of Executive Officers and Directors.
- (4) We do not have an investment adviser and are internally managed by our executive officers under the supervision of our Board of Directors. As a result, we do not pay investment advisory fees, but instead we pay the operating costs associated with employing investment management professionals.
- (5) Interest payments on borrowed funds represents estimated annualized interest payments on borrowed funds for 2009. Citigroup has an equity participation right through a warrant participation agreement on the pool of loans and warrants and shares underlying the warrants collateralized under our prior credit facility with Citigroup (the Citigroup Facility). As a fee and incentive to Citigroup for the extension of the Citigroup Facility, we entered into a Warrant Participant Agreement with Citigroup in August 2005. Pursuant to the Warrant Participation Agreement, we granted to Citigroup a 10% participation in all warrants held as collateral. However, no additional warrants are included in collateral subsequent to the Citigroup Facility amendment on May 2, 2007. As a result, Citigroup is entitled to 10% of the realized gains on the warrants until the realized gains paid to Citigroup pursuant to the agreement equals \$3,750,000 (the Maximum Participation Limit). The obligations under the warrant participation agreement continue until the Maximum Participation Limit has been reached even after the Citigroup Facility was terminated. During the year ended December 31, 2009, we recorded an increase of the derivative liability related to this obligation and increased its unrealized appreciation by approximately \$29,000 for Citigroup's participation in unrealized gains in the warrant portfolio. The value of their participation right on unrealized appreciation in the related equity investments was approximately \$468,000 at December 31, 2009 and is included in accrued liabilities. Since inception of the warrant participation agreement, we have paid Citigroup approximately \$1.1 million under the warrant participation agreement thereby reducing our realized gains by this amount. For the year ended December 31, 2009, based on our average borrowings, the amount of reduction we recorded for our realized and unrealized gains for the related period, the additional cost of our borrowings as a result of the warrant participation agreement could be 1.48%. There can be no assurances that the unrealized appreciation of the warrants will not be higher or lower in future periods due to fluctuations in the value of the warrants, thereby increasing or reducing the effect on the cost of borrowing.
- (6) Fees paid in connection with borrowed funds represents estimated fees paid in connection with borrowed funds for 2009.
- (7) For the year ended December 31, 2009, we did not have any investments in shares of Acquired Funds that are not consolidated and, as a result, we did not directly or indirectly incur any fees from Acquired Funds.
- (8) Total annual expenses is the sum of operating expenses, interest payments on borrowed funds and fees paid in connection with borrowed funds.



**Table of Contents****Example**

The following example demonstrates the projected dollar amount of total cumulative expenses that would be incurred over various periods with respect to a hypothetical investment in our common stock. These amounts are based upon our payment of annual operating expenses at the levels set forth in the table above and assume no additional leverage.

	<b>1 Year</b>	<b>3 Years</b>	<b>5 Years</b>	<b>10 Years</b>
You would pay the following expenses on a \$1,000 investment, assuming a 5% annual return	\$ 128	\$ 276	\$ 415	\$ 724

The example and the expenses in the tables above should not be considered a representation of our future expenses, and actual expenses may be greater or lesser than those shown. Moreover, while the example assumes, as required by the applicable rules of the SEC, a 5% annual return, our performance will vary and may result in a return greater or lesser than 5%. In addition, while the example assumes reinvestment of all dividends and distributions at net asset value, participants in our dividend reinvestment plan may receive shares valued at the market price in effect at that time. This price may be at, above or below net asset value. See [Dividend Reinvestment Plan](#) for additional information regarding our dividend reinvestment plan.

**Table of Contents****SELECTED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL DATA**

The selected consolidated financial data should be read in conjunction with Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations, and the consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere herein. The selected balance sheet data as of the end of fiscal 2009, 2008, 2007, 2006 and 2005 and the selected statement of operations data for fiscal 2009, 2008, 2007, 2006 and 2005 have been derived from our audited financial statements included elsewhere herein, which have been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm. The historical data are not necessarily indicative of results to be expected for any future period.

	2009	For the year ended December 31,			2005
	2008	2007	2006		
<b>Investment income:</b>					
Interest	\$ 62,200	\$ 67,283	\$ 48,757	\$ 26,278	\$ 9,791
Fees	12,077	8,552	5,127	3,230	876
<b>Total investment income</b>	<b>74,277</b>	<b>75,835</b>	<b>53,884</b>	<b>29,508</b>	<b>10,667</b>
<b>Operating expenses:</b>					
Interest	9,387	13,121	4,404	5,770	1,801
Loan fees	1,880	2,649	1,290	810	1,098
General and administrative	7,281	6,899	5,437	5,409	2,285
<b>Employee Compensation:</b>					
Compensation and benefits	10,737	11,595	9,135	5,779	3,706
Stock-based compensation	1,888	1,590	1,127	617	252
<b>Total employee compensation</b>	<b>12,625</b>	<b>13,185</b>	<b>10,262</b>	<b>6,396</b>	<b>3,958</b>
<b>Total operating expenses</b>	<b>31,173</b>	<b>35,854</b>	<b>21,393</b>	<b>18,385</b>	<b>9,142</b>
Net investment income before provision for income taxes and investment gains and losses	43,104	39,981	32,491	11,123	1,525
Provision for income taxes			2	643	225
Net investment income	43,104	39,982	32,489	11,123	1,270
Net realized gain (loss) on investments	(30,801)	2,643	2,791	(1,604)	482
Provision for Excise Tax		(203)	(139)		
Net decrease in unrealized appreciation on investments	1,269	(21,426)	7,268	2,508	353
Net realized and unrealized gain (loss)	(29,532)	(18,986)	9,920	904	835
<b>Net increase (decrease) in net assets resulting from operations</b>	<b>13,572</b>	<b>\$ 20,995</b>	<b>\$ 42,409</b>	<b>\$ 11,384</b>	<b>\$ 2,105</b>
Cash and stock dividends declared per common share	\$ 1.26	\$ 1.32	\$ 1.20	\$ 0.90	\$ 0.33

**Table of Contents**

(\$ in thousands, except per share data)	As of December 31,				
	2009	2008	2007	2006	2005
<b>Balance sheet data:</b>					
Investments, at value	\$ 370,437	\$ 581,301	\$ 529,972	\$ 283,234	\$ 176,673
Cash and cash equivalents	124,828	17,242	7,856	16,404	15,362
Total assets	508,967	608,672	541,943	301,142	193,648
Total liabilities	142,452	226,214	141,206	45,729	79,296
Total net assets	366,515	382,458	400,737	255,413	114,352
<b>Other Data:</b>					
Total debt investments, at value	\$ 320,902	\$ 540,054	\$ 482,123	\$ 266,724	\$ 166,646
Total warrant investments, at value	14,450	17,883	21,646	8,441	5,160
Total equity investments, at value	35,085	23,364	26,203	8,069	4,867
Unfunded commitments	11,700	82,000	130,602	55,500	30,200
Net asset value per share <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 10.29	\$ 11.56	\$ 12.31	\$ 11.65	\$ 11.67

(1) Based on common shares outstanding at period end.

The following tables set forth certain quarterly financial information for each of the eight quarters up to and ending December 31, 2009. This information was derived from our unaudited consolidated financial statements. Results for any quarter are not necessarily indicative of results for the full year or for any future quarter.

(Amounts in thousands, except per share data)	For the Quarter End						
	December 31, 2009	September 30, 2009	June 30, 2009	March 31, 2009	December 31, 2008	September 30, 2008	June 30, 2008
<b>Selected Quarterly Data (unaudited):</b>							
Total investment income	\$ 16,666	\$ 17,681	\$ 19,480	\$ 20,450	\$ 21,963	\$ 19,248	\$ 19,022
Net investment income before provision for income taxes and investment gains and losses	9,377	10,347	11,821	11,558	11,015	9,992	9,972
Net increase (decrease) in net assets resulting from operations	8,459	13,690	(13,059)	4,482	(10,939)	12,538	8,358
Net increase (decrease) in net assets resulting from operations per common share (basic)	\$ 0.24	\$ 0.39	\$ (0.38)	\$ 0.14	\$ (0.33)	\$ 0.38	\$ 0.25

**Table of Contents**

**RISK FACTORS**

*Investing in our common stock may be speculative and involves a high degree of risk. Before you invest in shares of our common stock, you should be aware of various risks, including those described below. You should carefully consider these risks, together with all of the other information included in this prospectus, before you decide whether to make an investment in our common stock. The risks set forth below are not the only risks we face. If any of the following risks occur, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be materially adversely affected. In such case, our net asset value and the trading price of our common stock could decline, and you may lose all or part of your investment.*

**Risks Related to our Business Structure and Current Economic and Market Conditions**

*We have a limited operating history as a business development company, which may affect our ability to manage our business and may impair your ability to assess our prospects.*

We were incorporated in December 2003 and commenced investment operations in September 2004. We are subject to all of the business risks and uncertainties associated with any new business enterprise, including the risk that we will not achieve our investment objective and that the value of our common stock could decline substantially. We have a limited operating history as a business development company. As a result, we have limited operating results under these regulatory frameworks that can demonstrate to you either their effect on the business or our ability to manage the business within these frameworks. If we fail to maintain our status as a business development company or fail to qualify as a RIC, our operating flexibility and results of operations would be significantly affected.

*We are currently in a period of capital markets disruption and recession and we do not expect these conditions to improve in the near future.*

The United States has been in a recession since late 2007. Disruptions in the capital markets have increased the spread between the yields realized on risk-free and higher risk securities, resulting in illiquidity in the debt capital markets. We believe these conditions may continue for a prolonged period of time or worsen in the future. A prolonged period of market illiquidity may cause us to reduce the value of loans we originate and/or fund, which could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations. Unfavorable economic conditions also could increase our funding costs, limit our access to the capital markets or result in a decision by lenders not to extend credit to us. These events could prevent us from increasing our investment originations and negatively impact our operating results.

Despite the current capital market disruption and recession, venture capitalists increased their investment activity during the second half of 2009. As a result of this favorable level of venture capital investment activities, we are experiencing an increase in new investment origination activities which commenced in the fourth quarter of 2009, and we expect it to continue as the venture capital community continues to make new investments. To the extent that we are able, we intend to seek new investment opportunities; however, we remain cautious and conservative in our investment and credit management strategies and we do not expect to see any significant balance sheet loan portfolio growth until the second half of 2010 or beyond.

*Current market conditions have materially and adversely impacted debt and equity capital markets in the United States, which could result in a negative impact on our business and operations.*

The debt and equity capital markets in the United States have been negatively impacted by significant write-offs in the financial services sector relating to subprime mortgages and the re-pricing of credit risk in the broadly syndicated market, among other things. These events, along with the deterioration of the housing market, the failure of major financial institutions and the resulting United States Federal government actions have led to worsening general economic conditions, which have materially and adversely impacted the broader financial and credit markets and have reduced the availability of debt and equity capital for the market as a whole and financial

---

**Table of Contents**

firms in particular. Commercial finance companies have previously utilized the securitization market to finance some investment activities and we had intended to use securitization financing. Due to the current dislocation of the securitization market, which we believe may continue for an extended period of time, access to this funding source has essentially been eliminated. We and other companies in the commercial finance sector may have to access alternative debt markets in order to grow. The debt capital that will be available may be at a higher cost, and terms and conditions may be less favorable which could negatively affect our financial performance and results. In addition, the prolonged continuation of further deterioration of current market conditions could adversely impact our business.

***We have and may in the future choose to pay dividends in our own stock, in which case you may be required to pay tax in excess of the cash you receive.***

Under a revenue procedure issued by the Internal Revenue Service, RICs are permitted to treat certain distributions made with respect to tax years ending prior to January 1, 2012, and payable in up to 90% in their stock, as taxable dividends that will satisfy their annual distribution obligations for federal income tax and excise tax purposes. We previously determined to pay 90% of our first quarter 2009 dividend in shares of newly issued common stock, and we may in the future determine to distribute taxable dividends that are payable in part in our common stock. Taxable stockholders receiving such dividends will be required to include the full amount of the dividend as ordinary income (or as long-term capital gain to the extent such distribution is properly designated as a capital gain dividend) to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits for United States federal income tax purposes. As a result, a U.S. stockholder may be required to pay tax with respect to such dividends in excess of any cash received. If a U.S. stockholder sells the stock it receives as a dividend in order to pay this tax, the sales proceeds may be less than the amount included in income with respect to the dividend, depending on the market price of our stock at the time of the sale. Furthermore, with respect to non-U.S. stockholders, we may be required to withhold U.S. tax with respect to such dividends, including in respect of all or a portion of such dividend that is payable in stock. In addition, if a significant number of our stockholders determine to sell shares of our stock in order to pay taxes owed on dividends, it may put downward pressure on the trading price of our stock.

***We are dependent upon key management personnel for our future success, particularly Manuel A. Henriquez, and if we are not able to hire and retain qualified personnel, or if we lose any member of our senior management team, our ability to implement our business strategy could be significantly harmed.***

We depend upon the members of our senior management, particularly Mr. Henriquez, as well as other key personnel for the identification, final selection, structuring, closing and monitoring of our investments. These employees have critical industry experience and relationships on which we rely to implement our business plan. If we lose the services of Mr. Henriquez, or of any other senior management members, we may not be able to operate the business as we expect, and our ability to compete could be harmed, which could cause our operating results to suffer. We believe our future success will depend, in part, on our ability to identify, attract and retain sufficient numbers of highly skilled employees. If we do not succeed in identifying, attracting and retaining such personnel, we may not be able to operate our business as we expect.

***Our business model depends to a significant extent upon strong referral relationships with venture capital and private equity fund sponsors, and our inability to develop or maintain these relationships, or the failure of these relationships to generate investment opportunities, could adversely affect our business.***

We expect that members of our management team will maintain their relationships with venture capital and private equity firms, and we will rely to a significant extent upon these relationships to provide us with our deal flow. If we fail to maintain our existing relationships, our relationships become strained as a result of enforcing our rights with respect to non-performing portfolio companies in protecting our investments or we fail to develop new relationships with other firms or sources of investment opportunities, then we will not be able to grow our investment portfolio. In addition, persons with whom members of our management team have relationships are

## **Table of Contents**

not obligated to provide us with investment opportunities and, therefore, there is no assurance that such relationships will lead to the origination of debt or other investments.

***We operate in a highly competitive market for investment opportunities, and we may not be able to compete effectively.***

A number of entities compete with us to make the types of investments that we plan to make in prospective portfolio companies. We compete with a large number of venture capital and private equity firms, as well as with other investment funds, investment banks and other sources of financing, including traditional financial services companies such as commercial banks and finance companies. Many of our competitors are substantially larger and have considerably greater financial, technical, marketing and other resources than we do. For example, some competitors may have a lower cost of funds and/or access to funding sources that are not available to us. This may enable some competitors to make commercial loans with interest rates that are comparable to or lower than the rates that we typically offer. We may lose prospective portfolio companies if we do not match competitors' pricing, terms and structure. If we do match competitors' pricing, terms or structure, we may experience decreased net interest income and increased risk of credit losses. In addition, some of our competitors may have higher risk tolerances or different risk assessments, which could allow them to consider a wider variety of investments, establish more relationships and build their market shares. Furthermore, many potential competitors are not subject to the regulatory restrictions that the 1940 Act imposes on us as a business development company or that the Code would impose on us as a RIC. If we are not able to compete effectively, our business, financial condition, and results of operations will be adversely affected. As a result of this competition, there can be no assurance that we will be able to identify and take advantage of attractive investment opportunities that we identify, or that we will be able to fully invest our available capital.

***Because we intend to distribute substantially all of our income to our stockholders in order to qualify as a RIC, we will continue to need additional capital to finance our growth. If additional funds are unavailable or not available on favorable terms, our ability to grow will be impaired.***

In order to satisfy the tax requirements applicable to a RIC, to avoid payment of excise taxes and to minimize or avoid payment of income taxes, we intend to distribute to our stockholders substantially all of our ordinary income and realized net capital gains except for certain realized net long-term capital gains, which we may retain, pay applicable income taxes with respect thereto and elect to treat as deemed distributions to our stockholders. As a business development company, we generally are required to meet a coverage ratio of total assets to total borrowings and other senior securities, which includes all of our borrowings and any preferred stock that we may issue in the future, of at least 200%. This requirement limits the amount that we may borrow. This limitation may prevent us from incurring debt and require us to raise additional equity at a time when it may be disadvantageous to do so. Given the current dislocation in the credit market, we cannot assure you that debt and equity financing will be available to us on favorable terms, or at all, and debt financings may be restricted by the terms of any of our outstanding borrowings. If we are unable to incur additional debt, we may be required to raise additional equity at a time when it may be disadvantageous to do so. In addition, shares of closed-end investment companies have recently traded at discounts to their net asset values and our stock has been discounted in the market. This characteristic of closed-end investment companies is separate and distinct from the risk that our net asset value per share may decline. We cannot predict whether shares of our common stock will trade above, at or below our net asset value. If our common stock trades below its net asset value, we generally will not be able to issue additional shares of our common stock at its market price without first obtaining the approval for such issuance from our stockholders and our independent directors. If additional funds are not available to us, we could be forced to curtail or cease new lending and investment activities, and our net asset value could decline.

***Because we borrow money, there could be increased risk in investing in our company.***

Lenders have fixed dollar claims on our assets that are superior to the claims of stockholders, and we have granted, and may in the future grant, lenders a security interest in our assets in connection with borrowings. In

**Table of Contents**

the case of a liquidation event, those lenders would receive proceeds before our stockholders. In addition, borrowings, also known as leverage, magnify the potential for gain or loss on amounts invested and, therefore, increase the risks associated with investing in our securities. Leverage is generally considered a speculative investment technique. If the value of our assets increases, then leveraging would cause the net asset value attributable to our common stock to increase more than it otherwise would have had we not leveraged. Conversely, if the value of our assets decreases, leveraging would cause the net asset value attributable to our common stock to decline more than it otherwise would have had we not leveraged. Similarly, any increase in our revenue in excess of interest expense on our borrowed funds would cause our net income to increase more than it would without the leverage. Any decrease in our revenue would cause our net income to decline more than it would have had we not borrowed funds and could negatively affect our ability to make distributions on common stock. Our ability to service any debt that we incur will depend largely on our financial performance and will be subject to prevailing economic conditions and competitive pressures. We and, indirectly our stockholders will bear the cost associated with our leverage activity. Our secured credit facilities with Wells Fargo Capital Finance LLC and Union Bank, N.A. contain financial and operating covenants that could restrict our business activities, including our ability to declare dividends if we default under certain provisions.

As of December 31, 2009, there was no outstanding borrowing under Wells Facility. In addition, as of December 31, 2009, we had approximately \$130.6 million outstanding under the SBA debenture program.

As a business development company, generally we are not permitted to incur indebtedness unless immediately after such borrowing we have an asset coverage for total borrowings of at least 200% (i.e., the amount of debt may not exceed 50% of the value of our assets). In addition, we may not be permitted to declare any cash dividend or other distribution on our outstanding common shares, or purchase any such shares, unless, at the time of such declaration or purchase, we have asset coverage of at least 200% after deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution, or purchase price. If this ratio declines below 200%, we may not be able to incur additional debt and may need to sell a portion of our investments to repay some debt when it is disadvantageous to do so, and we may not be able to make distributions. As of December 31, 2009 our asset coverage for senior indebtedness is well over 200% since we exclude SBA leverage from this ratio and we have no other borrowings outstanding.

	Assumed Return on Our Portfolio (Net of Expenses)				
	(10)%	(5)%	0%	5%	10%
Corresponding return to stockholder <sup>(1)</sup>	(23.27)%	(13.29)%	(3.31)%	6.67%	16.65%

(1) Assumes \$509.0 million in total assets, \$130.6 million in debt outstanding, \$366.5 million in stockholders' equity, and an average cost of funds of 6.5%, which is the approximate cost of funds of the Wells Facility for the period ended December 31, 2009. Actual interest payments may be different.

***Because most of our investments typically are not in publicly-traded securities, there is uncertainty regarding the value of our investments, which could adversely affect the determination of our net asset value.***

At December 31, 2009, portfolio investments, which are valued at fair value by the Board of Directors, were approximately 73% of our total assets. We expect our investments to continue to consist primarily of securities issued by privately-held companies, the fair value of which is not readily determinable. In addition, we are not permitted to maintain a general reserve for anticipated loan losses. Instead, we are required by the 1940 Act to specifically value each investment and record an unrealized gain or loss for any asset that we believe has increased or decreased in value.

There is no single standard for determining fair value in good faith. We value these securities at fair value as determined in good faith by our Board of Directors, based on the recommendations of our Valuation Committee. The Valuation Committee uses its best judgment in arriving at the fair value of these securities. As a result,

**Table of Contents**

determining fair value requires that judgment be applied to the specific facts and circumstances of each portfolio investment while employing a consistently applied valuation process for the types of investments we make. However, the Board of Directors retains ultimate authority as to the appropriate valuation of each investment. Because such valuations are inherently uncertain and may be based on estimates, our determinations of fair value may differ materially from the values that would be assessed if a ready market for these securities existed. We adjust quarterly the valuation of our portfolio to reflect the Board of Directors' determination of the fair value of each investment in our portfolio. Any changes in fair value are recorded in our statement of operations as net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation. Our net asset value could be adversely affected if our determinations regarding the fair value of our investments were materially higher than the values that we ultimately realize upon the disposal of such securities.

***Our financial results could be negatively affected if a significant portfolio investment fails to perform as expected.***

Our total investment in companies may be significant individually or in the aggregate. As a result, if a significant investment in one or more companies fails to perform as expected, our financial results could be more negatively affected and the magnitude of the loss could be more significant than if we had made smaller investments in more companies. The following table shows the fair value of the totals of investments held in portfolio companies at December 31, 2009 that represent greater than 5% of net assets:

(in thousands)	December 31, 2009	
	Fair Value	Percentage of Net Assets
InfoLogix, Inc.	\$ 32,184	8.8%
Zayo Bandwidth, Inc.	24,317	6.6
Labopharm USA, Inc.	21,025	5.7

InfoLogix, Inc., a public company traded on the NASDAQ Capital Market under the symbol **IFGL**, is a provider of enterprise mobility and radio frequency identification (RFID) solutions. The Company provides these solutions to its customers by utilizing a combination of products and services, including consulting, business software applications, managed services, mobile workstations and devices, and wireless infrastructure. At December 31, 2009 we owned approximately 72% of outstanding shares of common stock of InfoLogix, Inc., which represents a controlling interest in this portfolio company.

Zayo Bandwidth Corporation owns and operates fiber optic networks in various regions of the United States and provides bandwidth services to carriers, web-centric companies, public institutions and enterprises.

Labopharm, Inc. is a specialty pharmaceutical company that, together with its subsidiaries, develops drugs using its proprietary controlled-release technologies.

Our financial results could be negatively affected if these portfolio companies or any of our other significant portfolio companies encounter financial difficulty and fail to repay their obligations or to perform as expected.

***Regulations governing our operations as a business development company affect our ability to, and the manner in which, we raise additional capital, which may expose us to risks.***

Our business will require a substantial amount of capital. We may acquire additional capital from the issuance of senior securities, including borrowings, securitization transactions or other indebtedness, or the issuance of additional shares of our common stock. However, we may not be able to raise additional capital in the future on favorable terms or at all. We may issue debt securities, other evidences of indebtedness or preferred stock, and we may borrow money from banks or other financial institutions, which we refer to collectively as senior securities, up to the maximum amount permitted by the 1940 Act. Under the 1940 Act, we are not permitted to incur indebtedness unless immediately after such borrowing we have an asset coverage for total borrowings of at least 200% (i.e., the amount of debt may not exceed 50% of the value of our assets). In addition, we may not be permitted to declare any cash dividend or other distribution on our outstanding common shares, or



## **Table of Contents**

purchase any such shares, unless, at the time of such declaration or purchase, we have an asset coverage of at least 200% after deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution, or purchase price. Our ability to pay dividends or issue additional senior securities would be restricted if our asset coverage ratio were not at least 200%. If the value of our assets declines, we may be unable to satisfy this test. If that happens, we may be required to liquidate a portion of our investments and repay a portion of our indebtedness at a time when such sales may be disadvantageous. As a result of issuing senior securities, we would also be exposed to typical risks associated with leverage, including an increased risk of loss. If we issue preferred stock, the preferred stock would rank senior to common stock in our capital structure, preferred stockholders would have separate voting rights and might have rights, preferences, or privileges more favorable than those of our common stockholders and the issuance of preferred stock could have the effect of delaying, deferring, or preventing a transaction or a change of control that might involve a premium price for holders of our common stock or otherwise be in your best interest.

To the extent that we are constrained in our ability to issue debt or other senior securities, we will depend on issuances of common stock to finance operations. Other than in certain limited situations such as rights offerings, as a business development company, we are generally not able to issue our common stock at a price below net asset value without first obtaining required approvals from our stockholders and our independent directors. If we raise additional funds by issuing more common stock or senior securities convertible into, or exchangeable for, our common stock, then the percentage ownership of our stockholders at that time will decrease, and you might experience dilution. Moreover, we can offer no assurance that we will be able to issue and sell additional equity securities in the future, on favorable terms or at all.

In addition to issuing securities to raise capital as described above, we anticipate that, in the future, we may securitize our loans to generate cash for funding new investments. The securitization market has effectively shut down with the recent financial market collapse and we cannot assure you that we will be able to securitize our loans in the near future, or at all. An inability to successfully securitize our loan portfolio could limit our ability to grow our business and fully execute our business strategy.

***Our equity ownership in a portfolio company may represent a Control Investment. Our ability to exit a debt or equity investment in a timely manner because we are in a control position or have access to inside information in the portfolio company could result in a realized loss on the investment.***

If we obtain a Control Investment in a portfolio company our ability to divest ourselves from a debt or equity investment could be restricted due to illiquidity in a private stock, limited trading volume on a public company's stock, inside information on a company's performance, insider blackout periods, or other factors that could prohibit us from disposing of the investment as we would if it were not a Control Investment. Additionally, we may choose not to take certain actions to protect a debt investment in a Control Investment portfolio company. As a result, we could experience a decrease in the value of our portfolio company holdings and potentially incur a realized loss on the investment.

***When we are a debt or minority equity investor in a portfolio company, we may not be in a position to control the entity, and management of the company may make decisions that could decrease the value of our portfolio holdings.***

We make both debt and minority equity investments; therefore, we are subject to the risk that a portfolio company may make business decisions with which we disagree, and the stockholders and management of such company may take risks or otherwise act in ways that do not serve our interests. As a result, a portfolio company may make decisions that could decrease the value of our portfolio holdings.

***If we do not invest a sufficient portion of our assets in qualifying assets, we could fail to qualify as a business development company or be precluded from investing according to our current business strategy.***

As a business development company, we may not acquire any assets other than qualifying assets unless, at the time of and after giving effect to such acquisition, at least 70% of our total assets are qualifying assets. See Regulation.

## **Table of Contents**

We believe that most of the senior loans we make will constitute qualifying assets. However, we may be precluded from investing in what we believe are attractive investments if such investments are not qualifying assets for purposes of the 1940 Act. If we do not invest a sufficient portion of our assets in qualifying assets, we could lose our status as a business development company, which would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. Similarly, these rules could prevent us from making follow-on investments in existing portfolio companies (which could result in the dilution of our position) or could require us to dispose of investments at inappropriate times in order to comply with the 1940 Act. If we need to dispose of such investments quickly, it would be difficult to dispose of such investments on favorable terms. For example, we may have difficulty in finding a buyer and, even if we do find a buyer, we may have to sell the investments at a substantial loss.

### ***A failure on our part to maintain our qualification as a business development company would significantly reduce our operating flexibility.***

If we fail to continuously qualify as a business development company, we might be subject to regulation as a registered closed-end investment company under the 1940 Act, which would significantly decrease our operating flexibility. In addition, failure to comply with the requirements imposed on business development companies by the 1940 Act could cause the SEC to bring an enforcement action against us. For additional information on the qualification requirements of a business development company, see Regulation.

### ***We may have difficulty paying our required distributions if we recognize income before or without receiving cash representing such income.***

In accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and tax requirements, we include in income certain amounts that we have not yet received in cash, such as contracted payment-in-kind interest, which represents contractual interest added to a loan balance and due at the end of such loan's term. In addition to the cash yields received on our loans, in some instances, certain loans may also include any of the following: end-of-term payments, exit fees, balloon payment fees or prepayment fees. The increases in loan balances as a result of contracted payment-in-kind arrangements are included in income for the period in which such payment-in-kind interest was accrued, which is often in advance of receiving cash payment, and are separately identified on our statements of cash flows. We also may be required to include in income certain other amounts prior to receiving the related cash.

Any warrants that we receive in connection with our debt investments will generally be valued as part of the negotiation process with the particular portfolio company. As a result, a portion of the aggregate purchase price for the debt investments and warrants will be allocated to the warrants that we receive. This will generally result in original issue discount for tax purposes, which we must recognize as ordinary income, increasing the amount that we are required to distribute to qualify for the federal income tax benefits applicable to RICs. Because these warrants generally will not produce distributable cash for us at the same time as we are required to make distributions in respect of the related original issue discount, we would need to obtain cash from other sources or to pay a portion of our distributions using shares of newly issued common stock, consistent with Internal Revenue Service requirements, to satisfy such distribution requirements.

Other features of the debt instruments that we hold may also cause such instruments to generate an original issue discount, resulting in a dividend distribution requirement in excess of current cash interest received. Since in certain cases we may recognize income before or without receiving cash representing such income, we may have difficulty meeting the RIC tax requirement to distribute at least 90% of our net ordinary income and realized net short-term capital gains in excess of realized net long-term capital losses, if any. Under such circumstances, we may have to sell some of our assets, raise additional debt or equity capital or reduce new investment originations to meet these distribution requirements. If we are unable to obtain cash from other sources and are otherwise unable to satisfy such distribution requirements, we may fail to qualify for the federal

## **Table of Contents**

income tax benefits allowable to RICs and, thus, become subject to a corporate-level income tax on all our income. See Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations.

*There is a risk that you may not receive distributions or that our distributions may not grow over time.*

We intend to make distributions on a quarterly basis to our stockholders. We cannot assure you that we will achieve investment results, or our business may not perform in a manner that will allow us to make a specified level of distributions or year-to-year increases in cash distributions. In addition, due to the asset coverage test applicable to us as a business development company, we may be limited in our ability to make distributions. Also, our credit facility limits our ability to declare dividends if we default under certain provisions.

*If we are unable to manage our future growth effectively, we may be unable to achieve our investment objective, which could adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations and cause the value of your investment to decline.*

Our ability to achieve our investment objective will depend on our ability to sustain growth. Sustaining growth will depend, in turn, on our senior management team's ability to identify, evaluate, finance and invest in suitable companies that meet our investment criteria. Accomplishing this result on a cost-effective basis is largely a function of our marketing capabilities, our management of the investment process, our ability to provide efficient services and our access to financing sources on acceptable terms. Failure to manage our future growth effectively could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

*Our quarterly and annual operating results are subject to fluctuation as a result of the nature of our business, and if we fail to achieve our investment objective, the net asset value of our common stock may decline.*

We could experience fluctuations in our quarterly and annual operating results due to a number of factors, some of which are beyond our control, including, but not limited to, the interest rate payable on the debt securities that we acquire, the default rate on such securities, the level of our expenses, variations in and the timing of the recognition of realized and unrealized gains or losses, the degree to which we encounter competition in our markets and general economic conditions. As a result of these factors, results for any period should not be relied upon as being indicative of performance in future periods.

In addition, any of these factors could negatively impact our ability to achieve our investment objectives, which may cause our net asset value of our common stock to decline.

*Fluctuations in interest rates may adversely affect our profitability.*

A portion of our income will depend upon the difference between the rate at which we borrow funds and the interest rate on the debt securities in which we invest. Because we will borrow money to make investments, our net investment income is dependent upon the difference between the rate at which we borrow funds and the rate at which we invest these funds. Typically, we anticipate that our interest-earning investments will accrue and pay interest at both variable and fixed rates, and that our interest-bearing liabilities will accrue interest at variable rates. As a result, there can be no assurance that a significant change in market interest rates will not have a material adverse effect on our net investment income. We anticipate using a combination of equity and long-term and short-term borrowings to finance our investment activities.

A significant increase in market interest rates could harm our ability to attract new portfolio companies and originate new loans and investments. We expect that most of our current initial investments in debt securities will be at floating rate with a floor. However, in the event that we make investments in debt securities at variable rates, a significant increase in market interest rates could also result in an increase in our non-performing assets and a decrease in the value of our portfolio because our floating-rate loan portfolio companies may be unable to

## **Table of Contents**

meet higher payment obligations. In periods of rising interest rates, our cost of funds would increase, resulting in a decrease in our net investment income. In addition, a decrease in interest rates may reduce net income, because new investments may be made at lower rates despite the increased demand for our capital that the decrease in interest rates may produce. We may, but will not be required to, hedge against the risk of adverse movement in interest rates in our short-term and long-term borrowings relative to our portfolio of assets. If we engage in hedging activities, it may limit our ability to participate in the benefits of lower interest rates with respect to the hedged portfolio. Adverse developments resulting from changes in interest rates or hedging transactions could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

### ***Our realized gains are reduced by amounts paid pursuant to the warrant participation agreement.***

Citigroup, a former credit facility provider to Hercules, has an equity participation right through a warrant participation agreement on the pool of loans and certain warrants formerly collateralized under the then existing Citigroup Facility. Pursuant to the warrant participation agreement, we granted to Citigroup a 10% participation in all warrants held as collateral. As a result, Citigroup is entitled to 10% of the realized gains on certain warrants until the realized gains paid to Citigroup pursuant to the agreement equals \$3,750,000 (the Maximum Participation Limit). The obligations under the warrant participation agreement continue even after the Citigroup Facility is terminated until the Maximum Participation Limit has been reached.

During the year ended December 31, 2009, the Company reduced its realized gain by approximately \$175,000 for Citigroup's participation in the gain on sale of equity securities and recorded a decrease on participation liability and increased its unrealized gains by a net amount of approximately \$29,000 for Citigroup's participation. Since inception of the agreement, we have paid Citigroup approximately \$1.1 million under the warrant participation agreement thereby reducing our realized gains. In addition, our realized gains will be reduced by the amounts owed to Citigroup under the warrant participation agreement. The value of Citigroup's participation right on unrealized gains in the related equity investments since inception of the agreement was approximately \$468,000 at December 31, 2009 and is included in accrued liabilities and increased the unrealized gain recognized by us at December 31, 2009. Citigroup's rights under the warrant participation agreement increase our cost of borrowing and reduce our realized gains.

### ***It is likely that the terms of any long-term or revolving credit or warehouse facility we may enter into in the future could constrain our ability to grow our business.***

On August 25, 2008, we entered into the Wells Facility, a two-year revolving senior secured credit facility with an optional one-year extension with initial commitments of \$50 million at closing. The Wells Facility has the capacity to increase to \$300 million if additional lenders are added to the lending syndicate. See Note 4 to our consolidated financial statements. As of December 31, 2009, we have no outstanding borrowings under the Wells Facility. In February 2010, we extended the Wells Facility maturity to August of 2011 from August 2010 under the same terms and conditions of the existing agreement.

As of December 31, 2009, we had not added any additional lenders under the Wells Facility, although if the credit markets re-open we intend to do so in the future. Due to current credit conditions as a result of the recession, our cost of borrowing may increase with the addition of additional lenders under the Wells Facility.

The current lenders under the Wells Facility have, and any future lender or lenders will have, fixed dollar claims on our assets that are senior to the claims of our stockholders and, thus, will have a preference over our stockholders with respect to our assets in the collateral pool. In addition, we may grant a security interest in our assets in connection with any such borrowing. We expect such a facility to contain customary default provisions such as a minimum net worth amount, a profitability test, and a restriction on changing our business and loan quality standards. In addition, such facilities are expected to require the repayment of all outstanding debt on the maturity which may disrupt our business and potentially, the business our portfolio companies that are financed through the facilities. An event of default under any credit facility would likely result, among other things, in

## Table of Contents

termination of the availability of further funds under that facility and an accelerated maturity date for all amounts outstanding under the facility, which would likely disrupt our business and, potentially, the business of the portfolio companies whose loans we financed through the facility. This could reduce our revenues and, by delaying any cash payment allowed to us under our facility until the lender has been paid in full, reduce our liquidity and cash flow and impair our ability to grow our business and maintain our status as a RIC.

The terms of future available financing may place limits on our financial and operating flexibility. If we are unable to obtain sufficient capital in the future, we may:

be forced to reduce or discontinue our operations;

not be able to expand or acquire complementary businesses; and

not be able to develop new services or otherwise respond to changing business conditions or competitive pressures.

***In addition to regulatory restrictions that restrict our ability to raise capital, the Wells Facility and the Union Bank Facility contain various covenants which, if not complied with, could accelerate repayment under the facility, thereby materially and adversely affecting our liquidity, financial condition, results of operations and ability to pay dividends.***

The credit agreements governing the Wells Facility and the Union Bank Facility both require us to comply with certain financial and operational covenants. These covenants require us to, among other things, maintain certain financial ratios, including asset coverage, debt to equity and interest coverage. The Wells Facility was amended, effective April 30, 2009, to decrease the minimum tangible net worth covenant from \$360 million to \$250 million, contingent upon our total commitments under all lines of credit not exceeding \$250 million. To the extent our total commitments exceed \$250 million, the minimum tangible net worth covenant will increase on a pro rata basis commensurate with our net worth on a dollar for dollar basis. In addition, the tangible net worth covenant will increase by 90 cents on the dollar for every dollar of equity capital subsequently raised by the Company. As of December 31, 2009, we were in compliance with the covenants under the Wells Facility. The Union Bank Facility was put into place on February 10, 2010. Our ability to continue to comply with these covenants in the future depends on many factors, some of which are beyond our control. For example, during the quarter ended December 31, 2009, as a result of depreciation of the fair value of our investments, our net worth declined to approximately \$366 million from \$382 million at December 31, 2008. Accordingly, there are no assurances that we will be able to comply with these covenants. Failure to comply with these covenants would result in a default which, if we were unable to obtain a waiver from the lenders, could accelerate repayment under the facilities and thereby have a material adverse impact on our liquidity, financial condition, results of operations and ability to pay dividends.

***If we cannot obtain additional capital because of either regulatory or market price constraints, we could be forced to curtail or cease our new lending and investment activities, our net asset value could decrease and our level of distributions and liquidity could be affected adversely.***

The current economic and capital markets conditions in the U.S. have severely reduced capital availability. Reflecting concern about the stability of the financial markets, many lenders and institutional investors have reduced or ceased providing funding to borrowers. This market turmoil and tightening of credit have led to increased market volatility and widespread reduction of business activity generally.

Our ability to secure additional financing and satisfy our financial obligations under indebtedness outstanding from time to time will depend upon our future operating performance, which is subject to the prevailing general economic and credit market conditions, including interest rate levels and the availability of credit generally, and financial, business and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. The prolonged continuation or worsening of current economic and capital market conditions could have a material adverse effect on our ability to secure financing on favorable terms, if at all.

## **Table of Contents**

As of December 31, 2009, we had no outstanding borrowings under the Wells Facility and \$130.6 million under SBA debenture and \$69.4 million available borrowing capacity under these facilities, subject to terms and conditions.

In February of 2010, we closed on our new \$20.0 million credit facility with Union Bank, a one year revolving credit facility. Pricing of credit facility is LIBOR plus 2.25% with a floor of 4.0%, an advance rate of 50% against eligible loans, and secured by loans in the borrowing base.

As of December 31, 2009, we have been unable to secure additional lenders under our Wells Facility. There can be no assurance that we will be successful in obtaining any additional debt capital on terms acceptable to us or at all. If we are unable to obtain debt capital, then our equity investors will not benefit from the potential for increased returns on equity resulting from leverage to the extent that our investment strategy is successful and we may be limited in our ability to make new commitments or fundings to our portfolio companies.

***One of our wholly-owned subsidiaries is licensed by the U.S. Small Business Administration, and as a result, we will be subject to SBA regulations.***

Our wholly-owned subsidiary HT II is licensed to act as a small business investment company and is regulated by the SBA. The SBIC license allows our SBIC subsidiary to obtain leverage by issuing SBA-guaranteed debentures, subject to the issuance of a capital commitment by the SBA and other customary procedures. The SBA regulations require, among other things, that a licensed SBIC be examined periodically and audited by an independent auditor to determine the SBIC's compliance with the relevant SBA regulations.

Under current SBA regulations, a licensed SBIC can provide capital to those entities that have a tangible net worth not exceeding \$18.0 million and an average annual net income after Federal income taxes not exceeding \$6.0 million for the two most recent fiscal years. In addition, a licensed SBIC must devote 25.0% of its investment activity to those entities that have a tangible net worth not exceeding \$6.0 million and an average annual net income after Federal income taxes not exceeding \$2.0 million for the two most recent fiscal years. The SBA regulations also provide alternative size standard criteria to determine eligibility, which depend on the industry in which the business is engaged and are based on factors such as the number of employees and gross sales. The SBA regulations permit licensed SBICs to make long term loans to small businesses, invest in the equity securities of such businesses and provide them with consulting and advisory services. The SBA also places certain limitations on the financing terms of investments by SBICs in portfolio companies and prohibits SBICs from providing funds for certain purposes or to businesses in a few prohibited industries. Compliance with SBA requirements may cause HT II to forego attractive investment opportunities that are not permitted under SBA regulations.

SBA regulations currently limit the amount that our SBIC subsidiary may borrow up to a maximum of \$150 million when it has at least \$75 million in regulatory capital, receives a capital commitment from the SBA and has been through an examination by the SBA subsequent to licensing. As of December 31, 2009, 33.6% of our total investment portfolio is in our SBIC subsidiary.

Further, the SBA regulations require that a licensed SBIC be periodically examined and audited by the SBA to determine its compliance with the relevant SBA regulations. The SBA prohibits, without prior SBA approval, a change of control of an SBIC or transfers that would result in any person (or a group of persons acting in concert) owning 10.0% or more of a class of capital stock of a licensed SBIC. If HT II fails to comply with applicable SBA regulations, the SBA could, depending on the severity of the violation, limit or prohibit HT II's use of debentures, declare outstanding debentures immediately due and payable, and/or limit HT II from making new investments. Such actions by the SBA would, in turn, negatively affect us because HT II is our wholly owned subsidiary.

## **Table of Contents**

***Our wholly-owned SBIC subsidiary may be unable to make distributions to us that will enable us to meet or maintain RIC status, which could result in the imposition of an entity-level tax.***

In order for us to continue to qualify for RIC tax treatment and to minimize corporate-level taxes, we will be required to distribute substantially all of our net ordinary income and net capital gain income, including income from certain of our subsidiaries, which includes the income from our SBIC subsidiary. We will be partially dependent on our SBIC subsidiary for cash distributions to enable us to meet the RIC distribution requirements. Our SBIC subsidiary may be limited by the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, and SBA regulations governing SBICs, from making certain distributions to us that may be necessary to maintain our status as a RIC. We may have to request a waiver of the SBA's restrictions for our SBIC subsidiary to make certain distributions to maintain our RIC status. We cannot assure you that the SBA will grant such waiver and if our SBIC subsidiary is unable to obtain a waiver, compliance with the SBA regulations may result in loss of RIC tax treatment and a consequent imposition of an entity-level tax on us.

***If we are unable to satisfy Code requirements for qualification as a RIC, then we will be subject to corporate-level income tax, which would adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.***

We elected to be treated as a RIC for federal income tax purposes with the filing of our federal corporate income tax return for 2006. We will not qualify for the tax treatment allowable to RICs if we are unable to comply with the source of income, diversification and distribution requirements contained in Subchapter M of the Code, or if we fail to maintain our election to be regulated as a business development company under the 1940 Act. If we fail to qualify for the federal income tax benefits allowable to RICs for any reason and remain or become subject to a corporate-level income tax, the resulting taxes could substantially reduce our net assets, the amount of income available for distribution to our stockholders and the actual amount of our distributions. Such a failure would have a material adverse effect on us, the net asset value of our common stock and the total return, if any, obtainable from your investment in our common stock. Any net operating losses that we incur in periods during which we qualify as a RIC will not offset net capital gains (i.e., net realized long-term capital gains in excess of net realized short-term capital losses) that we are otherwise required to distribute, and we cannot pass such net operating losses through to our stockholders. In addition, net operating losses that we carry over to a taxable year in which we qualify as a RIC normally cannot offset ordinary income or capital gains.

***Changes in laws or regulations governing our business could negatively affect the profitability of our operations.***

Changes in the laws or regulations, or the interpretations of the laws and regulations, which govern business development companies, SBICs, RICs or non-depository commercial lenders could significantly affect our operations and our cost of doing business. We are subject to federal, state and local laws and regulations and are subject to judicial and administrative decisions that affect our operations, including our loan originations, maximum interest rates, fees and other charges, disclosures to portfolio companies, the terms of secured transactions, collection and foreclosure procedures, and other trade practices. If these laws, regulations or decisions change, or if we expand our business into jurisdictions that have adopted more stringent requirements than those in which we currently conduct business, then we may have to incur significant expenses in order to comply or we may have to restrict our operations. In addition, if we do not comply with applicable laws, regulations and decisions, then we may lose licenses needed for the conduct of our business and be subject to civil fines and criminal penalties, any of which could have a material adverse effect upon our business results of operations or financial condition.

***Results may fluctuate and may not be indicative of future performance.***

Our operating results may fluctuate and, therefore, you should not rely on current or historical period results to be indicative of our performance in future reporting periods. Factors that could cause operating results to fluctuate include, but are not limited to, variations in the investment origination volume and fee income earned, changes in the accrual status of our debt investments, variations in timing of prepayments, variations in and the

## **Table of Contents**

timing of the recognition of net realized gains or losses and changes in unrealized appreciation or depreciation, the level of our expenses, the degree to which we encounter competition in our markets, and general economic conditions.

### **Risks Related to Our Investments**

*Our investments are concentrated in certain industries and in a number of technology-related companies, which subjects us to the risk of significant loss if any of these companies default on their obligations under any of their debt securities that we hold, or if any of the technology-related industry sectors experience a downturn.*

We have invested and intend to continue investing in a limited number of technology-related companies. A consequence of this limited number of investments is that the aggregate returns we realize may be significantly adversely affected if a small number of investments perform poorly or if we need to write down the value of any one investment. Beyond the asset diversification requirements to which we will be subject as a RIC, we do not have fixed guidelines for diversification or limitations on the size of our investments in any one portfolio company and our investments could be concentrated in relatively few issuers. In addition, we have invested in and intend to continue investing, under normal circumstances, at least 80% of the value of our total assets (including the amount of any borrowings for investment purposes) in technology-related companies. As of December 31, 2009, approximately 56.5% of the fair value of our portfolio was composed of investments in four industries: 15.7% was composed of investments in the communications and networking industry; 16.6% was composed of investments in the software industry; 14.0% was composed of investments in the drug discovery industry; and 10.2% was composed of investments in the information services industries. As a result, a downturn in technology-related industry sectors and particularly those in which we are heavily concentrated could materially adversely affect our financial condition.

*Our investments may be concentrated in portfolio companies which may have limited operating histories and financial resources.*

We expect that our portfolio will continue to consist of investments that may have relatively limited operating histories. These companies may be particularly vulnerable to economic downturns such as the current recession, may have more limited access to capital and higher funding costs, may have a weaker financial position and may need more capital to expand or compete. These businesses also may experience substantial variations in operating results. They may face intense competition, including from companies with greater financial, technical and marketing resources. Furthermore, some of these companies do business in regulated industries and could be affected by changes in government regulation. Accordingly, these factors could impair their cash flow or result in other events, such as bankruptcy, which could limit their ability to repay their obligations to us, and may adversely affect the return on, or the recovery of, our investment in these companies. We cannot assure you that any of our investments in our portfolio companies will be successful. Our portfolio companies compete with larger, more established companies with greater access to, and resources for, further development in these new technologies. We may lose our entire investment in any or all of our portfolio companies.

*Our investment strategy focuses on technology-related companies, which are subject to many risks, including volatility, intense competition, shortened product life cycles and periodic downturns, and you could lose all or part of your investment.*

We have invested and will continue investing primarily in technology-related companies, many of which may have narrow product lines and small market shares, which tend to render them more vulnerable to competitors' actions and market conditions, as well as to general economic downturns. The revenues, income (or losses), and valuations of technology-related companies can and often do fluctuate suddenly and dramatically. In addition, technology-related markets are generally characterized by abrupt business cycles and intense competition. Beginning in mid-2000, there was substantial excess production capacity and a significant



## **Table of Contents**

slowdown in many technology-related industries. This overcapacity, together with a cyclical economic downturn, resulted in substantial decreases in the market capitalization of many technology-related companies. While such valuations have recovered to some extent, such decreases in market capitalization may occur again, and any future decreases in technology-related company valuations may be substantial and may not be temporary in nature. Therefore, our portfolio companies may face considerably more risk of loss than do companies in other industry sectors.

Because of rapid technological change, the average selling prices of products and some services provided by technology-related companies have historically decreased over their productive lives. As a result, the average selling prices of products and services offered by technology-related companies may decrease over time, which could adversely affect their operating results, their ability to meet obligations under their debt securities and the value of their equity securities. This could, in turn, materially adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***We have invested in and may continue investing in technology-related companies that do not have venture capital or private equity firms as equity investors, and these companies may entail a higher risk of loss than do companies with institutional equity investors, which could increase the risk of loss of your investment.***

Our portfolio companies will often require substantial additional equity financing to satisfy their continuing working capital and other cash requirements and, in most instances, to service the interest and principal payments on our investment. Portfolio companies that do not have venture capital or private equity investors may be unable to raise any additional capital to satisfy their obligations or to raise sufficient additional capital to reach the next stage of development. Portfolio companies that do not have venture capital or private equity investors may be less financially sophisticated and may not have access to independent members to serve on their boards, which means that they may be less successful than portfolio companies sponsored by venture capital or private equity firms. Accordingly, financing these types of companies may entail a higher risk of loss than would financing companies that are sponsored by venture capital or private equity firms.

***Price declines and illiquidity in the corporate debt markets could adversely affect the fair value of our portfolio investments, reducing our net asset value through increased net unrealized depreciation.***

As a BDC, we are required to carry our investments at market value or, if no market value is ascertainable, at fair market value as determined in good faith by or under the direction of our board of directors. As part of the valuation process, we may take into account the following types of factors, if relevant, in determining the fair value of our investments: the enterprise value of a portfolio company (an estimate of the total fair value of the portfolio company's debt and equity), the nature and realizable value of any collateral, the portfolio company's ability to make payments and its earnings and discounted cash flow, the markets in which the portfolio company does business, a comparison of the portfolio company's securities to publicly traded securities, changes in the interest rate environment and the credit markets generally that may affect the price at which similar investments may be made in the future and other relevant factors. When an external event such as a purchase transaction, public offering or subsequent equity sale occurs, we use the pricing indicated by the external event to corroborate our valuation. Decreases in the market values or fair values of our investments are recorded as unrealized depreciation. The continuing unprecedented declines in prices and liquidity in the capital markets have resulted in some net unrealized depreciation in our portfolio. As of December 31, 2009, conditions in the public and private debt and equity markets had continued to deteriorate and pricing levels continued to decline. As a result, in the future, depending on market conditions, we could incur substantial realized losses and may suffer substantial unrealized depreciation in future periods, which could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

## **Table of Contents**

***Economic recessions or downturns could impair the ability of our portfolio companies to repay loans, which, in turn, could increase our non-performing assets, decrease the value of our portfolio, reduce our volume of new loans and harm our operating results, which might have an adverse effect on our results of operations.***

The U.S. and most other markets have entered into a period of recession. Many of our portfolio companies may be susceptible to economic slowdowns or recessions and may be unable to repay our loans during such periods. Therefore, our non-performing assets are likely to increase and the value of our portfolio is likely to decrease during such periods. There were five loans on non-accrual status as of December 31, 2009 with a fair value of approximately \$10.5 million. There were four loans on non-accrual status as of December 31, 2008 with a fair value of approximately \$864,000. Adverse economic conditions also may decrease the value of collateral securing some of our loans and the value of our equity investments. Economic slowdowns or recessions could lead to financial losses in our portfolio and a decrease in revenues, net income and assets. Unfavorable economic conditions also could increase our funding costs, limit our access to the capital markets or result in a decision by lenders not to extend credit to us.

A portfolio company's failure to satisfy financial or operating covenants imposed by us or other lenders could lead to defaults and, potentially, termination of the portfolio company's loans and foreclosure on its secured assets, which could trigger cross-defaults under other agreements and jeopardize the portfolio company's ability to meet its obligations under the debt securities that we hold. We may incur expenses to the extent necessary to seek recovery upon default or to negotiate new terms with a defaulting portfolio company. In addition, if a portfolio company goes bankrupt, even though we may have structured our investment as senior debt or secured debt, depending on the facts and circumstances, including the extent to which we actually provided significant managerial assistance, if any, to that portfolio company, a bankruptcy court might re-characterize our debt holding and subordinate all or a portion of our claim to that of other creditors. These events could harm our financial condition and operating results.

Generally, we do not control our portfolio companies. These portfolio companies may face intense competition, including competition from companies with greater financial resources, more extensive research and development, manufacturing, marketing and service capabilities and greater number of qualified and experienced managerial and technical personnel. They may need additional financing which they are unable to secure and which we are unable or unwilling to provide, or they may be subject to adverse developments unrelated to the technologies they acquire.

***Any unrealized losses we experience on our investment portfolio may be an indication of future realized losses, which could reduce our income available for distribution.***

As a business development company, we are required to carry our investments at market value or, if no market value is ascertainable, at fair value as determined in good faith by or under the direction of our Board of Directors. Decreases in the market values or fair values of our investments will be recorded as unrealized depreciation. Any unrealized losses in our investment portfolio could be an indication of a portfolio company's inability to meet its repayment obligations to us with respect to the affected investments. This could result in realized losses in the future and ultimately in reductions of our income available for distribution in future periods.

***A continuing lack of initial public offering opportunities may cause companies to stay in our portfolio longer, leading to lower returns, unrealized depreciation, or realized losses.***

Beginning in about 2001, fewer venture capital-backed companies per annum have been able to complete initial public offerings (IPOs) than in the years of the previous decade. For the year ended December 31, 2009, only 8 venture capital-backed companies completed IPOs in the United States according to Dow Jones Venture Source. Now that some of our companies are becoming more mature, a continuing lack of IPO opportunities for venture capital-backed companies could lead to companies staying longer in our portfolio as private entities still requiring funding. This situation may adversely affect the amount of available funding for early-stage companies

## **Table of Contents**

in particular as, in general, venture-capital firms are being forced to provide additional financing to late-stage companies that cannot complete an IPO. In the best case, such stagnation would dampen returns, and in the worst case, could lead to unrealized depreciation and realized losses as some companies run short of cash and have to accept lower valuations in private fundings or are not able to access additional capital at all. A continuing lack of IPO opportunities for venture capital-backed companies is also causing some venture capital firms to change their strategies, leading some of them to reduce funding of their portfolio companies and making it more difficult for such companies to access capital and to fulfill their potential, which can result in unrealized depreciation and realized losses in such companies by other companies such as ourselves who are co-investors in such companies.

***To the extent venture capital or private equity firms decrease or discontinue funding to their portfolio companies, our portfolio companies may not be able to meet their obligations under the debt securities that we hold.***

Most of our portfolio companies rely heavily on future rounds of funding from venture capital or private equity firms in order to continue operating their businesses and repaying their obligations to us under the debt securities that we hold. Venture capital and private equity firms in turn rely on their limited partners to pay in capital over time in order to fund their ongoing and future investment activities.

To the extent that venture capital and private equity firms' limited partners are unable to fulfill their ongoing funding obligations, the venture capital or private equity firms may be unable to continue financially supporting the ongoing operations of our portfolio companies. As a result, our portfolio companies may be unable to repay their obligations under the debt securities that we hold, which would harm our financial condition and results of operations.

***If the assets securing the loans that we make decrease in value, then we may lack sufficient collateral to cover losses.***

We believe that our portfolio companies generally will be able to repay our loans from their available capital, from future capital-raising transactions, or from cash flow from operations. However, to attempt to mitigate credit risks, we will typically take a security interest in the available assets of these portfolio companies, including the equity interests of their subsidiaries and, in some cases, the equity interests of our portfolio companies held by their stockholders. In many cases, our loans will include a period of interest-only payments. There is a risk that the collateral securing our loans may decrease in value over time, may be difficult to sell in a timely manner, may be difficult to appraise and may fluctuate in value based upon the success of the business and market conditions, including as a result of the inability of a portfolio company to raise additional capital. In some circumstances, our lien could be subordinated to claims of other creditors. Additionally, deterioration in a portfolio company's financial condition and prospects, including its inability to raise additional capital, may be accompanied by deterioration in the value of the collateral for the loan. Moreover, in the case of some of our structured debt with warrants, we may not have a first lien position on the collateral. Consequently, the fact that a loan is secured does not guarantee that we will receive principal and interest payments according to the loan's terms, or that we will be able to collect on the loan should we be forced to enforce our remedies.

In addition, because we invest in technology-related companies, a substantial portion of the assets securing our investment may be in the form of intellectual property, if any, inventory and equipment and, to a lesser extent, cash and accounts receivable. Intellectual property, if any, that is securing our loan could lose value if, among other things, the company's rights to the intellectual property are challenged or if the company's license to the intellectual property is revoked or expires. Inventory may not be adequate to secure our loan if our valuation of the inventory at the time that we made the loan was not accurate or if there is a reduction in the demand for the inventory.

Similarly, any equipment securing our loan may not provide us with the anticipated security if there are changes in technology or advances in new equipment that render the particular equipment obsolete or of limited value, or if the company fails to adequately maintain or repair the equipment. Any one or more of the preceding factors could materially impair our ability to recover principal in a foreclosure.

## **Table of Contents**

***The economic recession and future downturns or recessions could impair the value of the collateral for our loans to our portfolio companies and consequently increase the possibility of an adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.***

Many of our portfolio companies are susceptible to the current economic recession and may be unable to repay our loans during such periods. Therefore, our non-performing assets are likely to increase and the value of our portfolio is likely to decrease during such periods. Adverse economic conditions may also decrease the value of collateral securing some of our loans and the value of our equity investments.

In particular, intellectual property owned or controlled by our portfolio companies constitutes an important portion of the value of the collateral of our loans to our portfolio companies. Adverse economic conditions may decrease the demand for our portfolio companies' intellectual property and consequently its value in the event of a bankruptcy or required sale through a foreclosure proceeding. As a result, our ability to fully recover the amounts owed to us under the terms of the loans may be impaired by such events.

Economic slowdowns or recessions could lead to financial losses in our portfolio and a decrease in revenues, net income and assets. Unfavorable economic conditions also could increase our funding costs, limit our access to the capital markets or result in a decision by lenders not to extend credit to us.

A portfolio company's failure to satisfy financial or operating covenants imposed by us or other lenders could lead to defaults and, potentially, termination of the portfolio company's loans and foreclosure on its secured assets, which could trigger cross-defaults under other agreements and jeopardize the portfolio company's ability to meet its obligations under the debt securities that we hold. We may incur expenses to the extent necessary to seek recovery upon default or to negotiate new terms with a defaulting portfolio company. In addition, if a portfolio company goes bankrupt, even though we may have structured our investment as senior debt or secured debt, depending on the facts and circumstances, including the extent to which we actually provided significant managerial assistance, if any, to that portfolio company, a bankruptcy court might re-characterize our debt holding and subordinate all or a portion of our claim to that of other creditors. These events could harm our financial condition and operating results.

We do not control our portfolio companies. These portfolio companies may face intense competition, including competition from companies with greater financial resources, more extensive research and development, manufacturing, marketing and service capabilities and greater number of qualified and experienced managerial and technical personnel. They may need additional financing which they are unable to secure and which we are unable or unwilling to provide, or they may be subject to adverse developments unrelated to the technologies they acquire.

***We may suffer a loss if a portfolio company defaults on a loan and the underlying collateral is not sufficient.***

In the event of a default by a portfolio company on a secured loan, we will only have recourse to the assets collateralizing the loan. If the underlying collateral value is less than the loan amount, we will suffer a loss. In addition, we sometimes make loans that are unsecured, which are subject to the risk that other lenders may be directly secured by the assets of the portfolio company. In the event of a default, those collateralized lenders would have priority over us with respect to the proceeds of a sale of the underlying assets. In cases described above, we may lack control over the underlying asset collateralizing our loan or the underlying assets of the portfolio company prior to a default, and as a result the value of the collateral may be reduced by acts or omissions by owners or managers of the assets.

In the event of bankruptcy of a portfolio company, we may not have full recourse to its assets in order to satisfy our loan, or our loan may be subject to equitable subordination. In addition, certain of our loans are subordinate to other debt of the portfolio company. If a portfolio company defaults on our loan or on debt senior to our loan, or in the event of a portfolio company bankruptcy, our loan will be satisfied only after the senior debt

## **Table of Contents**

receives payment. Where debt senior to our loan exists, the presence of intercreditor arrangements may limit our ability to amend our loan documents, assign our loans, accept prepayments, exercise our remedies (through standstill periods) and control decisions made in bankruptcy proceedings relating to the portfolio company. Bankruptcy and portfolio company litigation can significantly increase collection losses and the time needed for us to acquire the underlying collateral in the event of a default, during which time the collateral may decline in value, causing us to suffer losses.

If the value of collateral underlying our loan declines or interest rates increase during the term of our loan, a portfolio company may not be able to obtain the necessary funds to repay our loan at maturity through refinancing. Decreasing collateral value and/or increasing interest rates may hinder a portfolio company's ability to refinance our loan because the underlying collateral cannot satisfy the debt service coverage requirements necessary to obtain new financing. If a borrower is unable to repay our loan at maturity, we could suffer a loss which may adversely impact our financial performance.

***The inability of our portfolio companies to commercialize their technologies or create or develop commercially viable products or businesses would have a negative impact on our investment returns.***

The possibility that our portfolio companies will not be able to commercialize their technology, products or business concepts presents significant risks to the value of our investment. Additionally, although some of our portfolio companies may already have a commercially successful product or product line when we invest, technology-related products and services often have a more limited market- or life-span than have products in other industries. Thus, the ultimate success of these companies often depends on their ability to continually innovate, or raise additional capital, in increasingly competitive markets. Their inability to do so could affect our investment return. In addition, the intellectual property held by our portfolio companies often represents a substantial portion of the collateral, if any, securing our investments. We cannot assure you that any of our portfolio companies will successfully acquire or develop any new technologies, or that the intellectual property the companies currently hold will remain viable. Even if our portfolio companies are able to develop commercially viable products, the market for new products and services is highly competitive and rapidly changing. Neither our portfolio companies nor we have any control over the pace of technology development. Commercial success is difficult to predict, and the marketing efforts of our portfolio companies may not be successful.

***An investment strategy focused primarily on privately-held companies presents certain challenges, including the lack of available information about these companies, a dependence on the talents and efforts of only a few key portfolio company personnel and a greater vulnerability to economic downturns.***

We invest primarily in privately-held companies. Generally, very little public information exists about these companies, and we are required to rely on the ability of our management team to obtain adequate information to evaluate the potential returns from investing in these companies. If we are unable to uncover all material information about these companies, then we may not make a fully informed investment decision, and we may not receive the expected return on our investment or lose some or all of the money invested in these companies. Also, privately-held companies frequently have less diverse product lines and a smaller market presence than do larger competitors. Privately-held companies are, thus, generally more vulnerable to economic downturns and may experience more substantial variations in operating results than do larger competitors. These factors could affect our investment returns.

In addition, our success depends, in large part, upon the abilities of the key management personnel of our portfolio companies, who are responsible for the day-to-day operations of our portfolio companies. Competition for qualified personnel is intense at any stage of a company's development, and high turnover of personnel is common in technology-related companies. The loss of one or more key managers can hinder or delay a company's implementation of its business plan and harm its financial condition. Our portfolio companies may not be able to attract and retain qualified managers and personnel. Any inability to do so may negatively impact our investment returns.

## **Table of Contents**

***If our portfolio companies are unable to protect their intellectual property rights, then our business and prospects could be harmed. If our portfolio companies are required to devote significant resources to protecting their intellectual property rights, then the value of our investment could be reduced.***

Our future success and competitive position depend in part upon the ability of our portfolio companies to obtain and maintain proprietary technology used in their products and services, which will often represent a significant portion of the collateral, if any, securing our investment. The portfolio companies will rely, in part, on patent, trade secret and trademark law to protect that technology, but competitors may misappropriate their intellectual property, and disputes as to ownership of intellectual property may arise. Portfolio companies may, from time to time, be required to institute litigation in order to enforce their patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights, to protect their trade secrets, to determine the validity and scope of the proprietary rights of others or to defend against claims of infringement. Such litigation could result in substantial costs and diversion of resources. Similarly, if a portfolio company is found to infringe upon or misappropriate a third party's patent or other proprietary rights, that portfolio company could be required to pay damages to such third party, alter its own products or processes, obtain a license from the third party and/or cease activities utilizing such proprietary rights, including making or selling products utilizing such proprietary rights. Any of the foregoing events could negatively affect both the portfolio company's ability to service our debt investment and the value of any related debt and equity securities that we own, as well as any collateral securing our investment.

***We may not be able to realize our entire investment on equipment-based loans in the case of default.***

We may from time-to-time provide loans that will be collateralized only by equipment of the portfolio company. If the portfolio company defaults on the loan we would take possession of the underlying equipment to satisfy the outstanding debt. The residual value of the equipment at the time we would take possession may not be sufficient to satisfy the outstanding debt and we could experience a loss on the disposition of the equipment.

***Our investments in foreign securities may involve significant risks in addition to the risks inherent in U.S. investments.***

Our investment strategy contemplates that a portion of our investments may be in securities of foreign companies. Investing in foreign companies may expose us to additional risks not typically associated with investing in U.S. companies. These risks include changes in exchange control regulations, political and social instability, expropriation, imposition of foreign taxes, less liquid markets and less available information than is generally the case in the U.S., higher transaction costs, less government supervision of exchanges, brokers and issuers, less developed bankruptcy laws, difficulty in enforcing contractual obligations, lack of uniform accounting and auditing standards and greater price volatility.

***Some of our portfolio companies may need additional capital, which may not be readily available.***

Our portfolio companies will often require substantial additional equity financing to satisfy their continuing working capital and other requirements, and in most instances to service the interest and principal payments on our investment. Each round of venture financing is typically intended to provide a company with only enough capital to reach the next stage of development. We cannot predict the circumstances or market conditions under which our portfolio companies will seek additional capital. It is possible that one or more of our portfolio companies will not be able to raise additional financing or may be able to do so only at a price or on terms unfavorable to us, either of which would negatively impact our investment returns. Some of these companies may be unable to obtain sufficient financing from private investors, public capital markets or traditional lenders. Accordingly, financing these types of companies may entail a higher risk of loss than would financing companies that are able to utilize traditional credit sources.

## **Table of Contents**

***We may be unable or decide not to make additional cash investments in our portfolio companies which could result in our losing our initial investment if the portfolio company fails.***

We may have to make additional cash investments in our portfolio companies to protect our overall investment value in the particular company. We retain the discretion to make any additional investments as our management determines. The failure to make such additional investments may jeopardize the continued viability of a portfolio company, and our initial (and subsequent) investments. Moreover, additional investments may limit the number of companies in which we can make initial investments. In determining whether to make an additional investment our management will exercise its business judgment and apply criteria similar to those used when making the initial investment. We cannot assure you that we will have sufficient funds to make any necessary additional investments, which could adversely affect our success and result in the loss of a substantial portion or all of our investment in a portfolio company.

***If our investments do not meet our performance expectations, you may not receive distributions.***

We intend to make distributions on a quarterly basis to our stockholders. We may not be able to achieve operating results that will allow us to make distributions at a specific level or to increase the amount of these distributions from time to time. In addition, due to the asset coverage test applicable to us as a business development company, we may be limited in our ability to make distributions. See Regulation. Also, restrictions and provisions in any future credit facilities may limit our ability to make distributions. As a RIC, if we do not distribute a certain percentage of our income annually, we will suffer adverse tax consequences, including failure to obtain, or possible loss of, the federal income tax benefits allowable to RICs. See Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations Taxation as a Regulated Investment Company. We cannot assure you that you will receive distributions at a particular level or at all.

***We may not have sufficient funds to make follow-on investments. Our decision not to make a follow-on investment may have a negative impact on a portfolio company in need of such an investment or may result in a missed opportunity for us.***

After our initial investment in a portfolio company, we may be called upon from time to time to provide additional funds to such company or have the opportunity to increase our investment in a successful situation, for example, the exercise of a warrant to purchase common stock. Any decision we make not to make a follow-on investment or any inability on our part to make such an investment may have a negative impact on a portfolio company in need of such an investment or may result in a missed opportunity for us to increase our participation in a successful operation and may dilute our equity interest or otherwise reduce the expected yield on our investment. Moreover, a follow-on investment may limit the number of companies in which we can make initial investments. In determining whether to make a follow-on investment, our management will exercise its business judgment and apply criteria similar to those used when making the initial investment. There is no assurance that we will make, or will have sufficient funds to make, follow-on investments and this could adversely affect our success and result in the loss of a substantial portion or all of our investment in a portfolio company.

***Any unrealized depreciation that we experience on our loan portfolio may be an indication of future realized losses, which could reduce our income available for distribution.***

As a business development company, we are required to carry our investments at market value or, if no market value is ascertainable, at the fair value as determined in good faith by our Board of Directors in accordance with procedures approved by our Board of Directors. Decreases in the market values or fair values of our investments will be recorded as unrealized depreciation. Any unrealized depreciation in our loan portfolio could be an indication of a portfolio company's inability to meet its repayment obligations to us with respect to the affected loans. This could result in realized losses in the future and ultimately in reductions of our income available for distribution in future periods.

## **Table of Contents**

***The lack of liquidity in our investments may adversely affect our business and, if we need to sell any of our investments, we may not be able to do so at a favorable price. As a result, we may suffer losses.***

We generally invest in debt securities with terms of up to seven years and hold such investments until maturity, and we do not expect that our related holdings of equity securities will provide us with liquidity opportunities in the near-term. We invest and expect to continue investing in companies whose securities have no established trading market and whose securities are and will be subject to legal and other restrictions on resale or whose securities are and will be less liquid than are publicly-traded securities. The illiquidity of these investments may make it difficult for us to sell these investments when desired. In addition, if we are required to liquidate all or a portion of our portfolio quickly, we may realize significantly less than the value at which we had previously recorded these investments. As a result, we do not expect to achieve liquidity in our investments in the near-term. However, to maintain our qualification as a business development company and as a RIC, we may have to dispose of investments if we do not satisfy one or more of the applicable criteria under the respective regulatory frameworks. Our investments are usually subject to contractual or legal restrictions on resale, or are otherwise illiquid, because there is usually no established trading market for such investments. The illiquidity of most of our investments may make it difficult for us to dispose of the investments at a favorable price and, as a result, we may suffer losses.

***Our portfolio companies may incur debt that ranks equally with, or senior to, our investments in such companies.***

We invest primarily in debt securities issued by our portfolio companies. In some cases, portfolio companies will be permitted to have other debt that ranks equally with, or senior to, the debt securities in which we invest. Such debt instruments may provide that the holders thereof are entitled to receive payment of interest or principal on or before the dates on which we are entitled to receive payments in respect of the debt securities in which we invest. Also, in the event of insolvency, liquidation, dissolution, reorganization or bankruptcy of a portfolio company, holders of debt instruments ranking senior to our investment in that portfolio company would typically be entitled to receive payment in full before we receive any distribution in respect of our investment. After repaying such senior creditors, such portfolio company might not have any remaining assets to use for repaying its obligation to us. In the case of debt ranking equally with debt securities in which we invest, we would have to share on a pari passu basis any distributions with other creditors holding such debt in the event of an insolvency, liquidation, dissolution, reorganization or bankruptcy. In addition, we would not be in a position to control any portfolio company by investing in its debt securities. As a result, we are subject to the risk that a portfolio company in which we invest may make business decisions with which we disagree and the management of such companies, as representatives of the holders of their common equity, may take risks or otherwise act in ways that do not best serve our interests as debt investors.

***Our equity related investments are highly speculative, and we may not realize gains from these investments. If our equity investments do not generate gains, then the return on our invested capital will be lower than it would otherwise be, which could result in a decline in the value of shares of our common stock.***

When we invest in debt securities, we generally expect to acquire warrants or other equity securities as well. Our goal is ultimately to dispose of these equity interests and realize gains upon disposition of such interests. Over time, the gains that we realize on these equity interests may offset, to some extent, losses that we experience on defaults under debt securities that we hold. However, the equity interests that we receive may not appreciate in value and, in fact, may decline in value. Accordingly, we may not be able to realize gains from our equity interests, and any gains that we do realize on the disposition of any equity interests may not be sufficient to offset any other losses that we experience.

***We generally do not control our portfolio companies and therefore our portfolio companies may make decisions with which we disagree.***

Generally, we do not control any of our portfolio companies, even though we may have board observation rights and our debt agreements may contain certain restrictive covenants. As a result, we are subject to the risk



## **Table of Contents**

that a portfolio company in which we invest may make business decisions with which we disagree and the management of such company, as representatives of the holders of their common equity, may take risks or otherwise act in ways that do not serve our interests as debt investors.

***Prepayments of our debt investments by our portfolio companies could adversely impact our results of operations and reduce our return on equity.***

In 2009, we received early loan repayments and paydown of working capital loans of approximately \$171.9 million. We are subject to the risk that the investments we make in our portfolio companies may be repaid prior to maturity. When this occurs, we will generally reinvest these proceeds in temporary investments, pending their future investment in new portfolio companies. These temporary investments will typically have substantially lower yields than the debt being prepaid and we could experience significant delays in reinvesting these amounts. Any future investment in a new portfolio company may also be at lower yields than the debt that was repaid. As a result, our results of operations could be materially adversely affected if one or more of our portfolio companies elect to prepay amounts owed to us. Additionally, prepayments could negatively impact our return on equity, which could result in a decline in the market price of our common stock.

***We may not realize gains from our equity investments.***

When we invest in debt securities, we generally expect to acquire warrants or other equity securities as well. However, the equity interests we receive may not appreciate in value and, in fact, may decline in value. Accordingly, we may not be able to realize gains from our equity interests, and any gains that we do realize on the disposition of any equity interests may not be sufficient to offset any other losses we experience.

***Our financial results could be negatively affected if we are unable to recover our principal investment as a result of a negative pledge on the intellectual property of our portfolio companies.***

In some cases, we collateralize our investments by obtaining a first priority security interest in a portfolio companies' assets, which may include their intellectual property. In other cases, we may obtain a first priority security interest in a portion of a portfolio company's assets and a negative pledge covering a company's intellectual property and a first priority security interest in the proceeds from such intellectual property. In the case of a negative pledge, the portfolio company cannot encumber or pledge their intellectual property without our permission. In the event of a default on a loan, the intellectual property of the portfolio company will most likely be liquidated to provide proceeds to pay the creditors of the company. As a result, a negative pledge may affect our ability to fully recover our principal investment. In addition, there can be no assurance that our security interest in the proceeds of the intellectual property will be enforceable in a court of law or bankruptcy court.

At December 31, 2009, approximately 71.9 % of our portfolio company loans were secured by a first priority security in all of the assets of the portfolio company, 1.9 % of our portfolio company loans were secured by a second priority security in all of the assets of the portfolio company and 26.2 % portfolio company loans were prohibited from pledging or encumbering their intellectual property pursuant to negative pledges.

***We may choose to waive or defer enforcement of covenants in the debt securities held in our portfolio, which may cause us to lose all or part of our investment in these companies.***

We structure the debt investments in our portfolio companies to include business and financial covenants placing affirmative and negative obligations on the operation of the company's business and its financial condition. However, from time to time we may elect to waive breaches of these covenants, including our right to payment, or waive or defer enforcement of remedies, such as acceleration of obligations or foreclosure on collateral, depending upon the financial condition and prospects of the particular portfolio company. These actions may reduce the likelihood of our receiving the full amount of future payments of interest or principal and be accompanied by a deterioration in the value of the underlying collateral as many of these companies may have limited financial resources, may be unable to meet future obligations and may go bankrupt. This could negatively impact our ability to pay dividends and cause the loss of all or part of your investment.

## **Table of Contents**

*Our loans could be subject to equitable subordination by a court which would increase our risk of loss with respect to such loans.*

Courts may apply the doctrine of equitable subordination to subordinate the claim or lien of a lender against a borrower to claims or liens of other creditors of the borrower, when the lender or its affiliates is found to have engaged in unfair, inequitable or fraudulent conduct. The courts have also applied the doctrine of equitable subordination when a lender or its affiliates is found to have exerted inappropriate control over a client, including control resulting from the ownership of equity interests in a client. We have made direct equity investments or received warrants in connection with loans representing approximately 13.4% of the aggregate outstanding balance of our portfolio as of December 31, 2009. Payments on one or more of our loans, particularly a loan to a client in which we also hold an equity interest, may be subject to claims of equitable subordination. If we were deemed to have the ability to control or otherwise exercise influence over the business and affairs of one or more of our portfolio companies resulting in economic hardship to other creditors of that company, this control or influence may constitute grounds for equitable subordination and a court may treat one or more of our loans as if it were unsecured or common equity in the portfolio company. In that case, if the portfolio company were to liquidate, we would be entitled to repayment of our loan on a pro-rata basis with other unsecured debt or, if the effect of subordination was to place us at the level of common equity, then on an equal basis with other holders of the portfolio company's common equity only after all of its obligations relating to its debt and preferred securities had been satisfied.

## **Risks Related to Our Common Stock**

*Investing in shares of our common stock may involve an above average degree of risk.*

The investments we make in accordance with our investment objective may result in a higher amount of risk, volatility or loss of principal than alternative investment options. Our investments in portfolio companies may be highly speculative and aggressive, and therefore, an investment in our common stock may not be suitable for investors with lower risk tolerance.

*Our common stock may trade below its net asset value per share, which limits our ability to raise additional equity capital.*

If our common stock is trading below its net asset value per share, we will generally not be able to issue additional shares of our common stock at its market price without first obtaining the approval for such issuance from our stockholders and our independent directors. Shares of business development companies, including shares of our common stock, have been trading at discounts to their net asset values. As of December 31, 2009, our net asset value per share was \$10.29. The daily average closing price of our shares on the NASDAQ Global Select Market for the quarter ended December 31, 2009 was \$9.79. If our common stock trades below net asset value, the higher cost of equity capital may result in it being unattractive to raise new equity, which may limit our ability to grow. The risk of trading below net asset value is separate and distinct from the risk that our net asset value per share may decline. We cannot predict whether shares of our common stock will trade above, at or below our net asset value.

*Provisions of the Maryland General Corporation Law, and of our charter and bylaws, could deter takeover attempts and have an adverse impact on the price of our common stock.*

The Maryland General Corporation Law and our charter and bylaws contain provisions that may have the effect of discouraging, delaying, or making difficult a change in control of our company or the removal of our incumbent directors. We will be covered by the Business Combination Act of the Maryland General Corporation Law to the extent that such statute is not superseded by applicable requirements of the 1940 Act. However, our Board of Directors has adopted a resolution exempting from the Business Combination Act any business combination between us and any person to the extent that such business combination receives the prior approval of our board, including a majority of our directors who are not interested persons as defined in the 1940 Act. In

## **Table of Contents**

addition, our bylaws contain a provision exempting from the Control Share Acquisition Act any and all acquisitions by any person of shares of our stock. The Business Combination Act (if our board should repeal the resolution) and the Control Share Acquisition Act (if we amend our bylaws to be subject to that Act) may discourage others from trying to acquire control of us and increase the difficulty of consummating any offer.

Under our charter, our Board of Directors is divided into three classes serving staggered terms, which will make it more difficult for a hostile bidder to acquire control of us. In addition, our Board of Directors may, without stockholder action, authorize the issuance of shares of stock in one or more classes or series, including preferred stock. Subject to compliance with the 1940 Act, our Board of Directors may, without stockholder action, amend our charter to increase the number of shares of stock of any class or series that we have authority to issue. The existence of these provisions, among others, may have a negative impact on the price of our common stock and may discourage third party bids for ownership of our company. These provisions may prevent any premiums being offered to you for shares of our common stock.

***If we conduct an offering of our common stock at a price below net asset value, investors are likely to incur immediate dilution upon the closing of the offering.***

At our Annual Meeting of Stockholders on June 3, 2009, our stockholders approved a proposal authorizing us to sell up to 20% of our common stock at a price below the Company's net asset value per share, subject to Board approval of the offering. If we were to issue shares at a price below net asset value, such sales would result in an immediate dilution to existing common stockholders, which would include a reduction in the net asset value per share as a result of the issuance. This dilution would also include a proportionately greater decrease in a stockholder's interest in our earnings and assets and voting interest in us than the increase in our assets resulting from such issuance.

In addition, if we determined to conduct additional offerings in the future there may be even greater discounts if we determine to conduct such offerings at prices below net asset value. As a result, investors will experience further dilution and additional discounts to the price of our common stock.

Because the number of shares of common stock that could be so issued and the timing of any issuance is not currently known, the actual dilutive effect of an offering cannot be predicted. We did not sell any of our common stocks at a price below our net asset value during year ended December 31, 2009.

***Current levels of market volatility are high. Our common stock price has been and continues to be volatile and may decrease substantially.***

The capital and credit market have been experiencing high volatility and disruption for more than 12 months. In 2009, we experienced greater than usual stock price volatility. In some cases, the markets have produced downward pressure on stock prices and credit availability for certain issuers without regard to those issuers' underlying financial strength. If current levels of market volatility continue or worsen, there can be no assurance that we will not experience an adverse effect, which may be material, on our ability to access capital and on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

In addition, the trading price of our common stock following an offering may fluctuate substantially. The price of the common stock that will prevail in the market after an offering may be higher or lower than the price you paid and the liquidity of our common stock may be limited, in each case depending on many factors, some of which are beyond our control and may not be directly related to our operating performance. These factors include, but are not limited to, the following:

price and volume fluctuations in the overall stock market from time to time;

significant volatility in the market price and trading volume of securities of RICs, business development companies or other financial services companies;

**Table of Contents**

any inability to deploy or invest our capital;

fluctuations in interest rates;

any shortfall in revenue or net income or any increase in losses from levels expected by investors or securities analysts;

the financial performance of specific industries in which we invest in on a recurring basis;

announcement of strategic developments, acquisitions, and other material events by us or our competitors, or operating performance of companies comparable to us;

changes in regulatory policies or tax guidelines with respect to RICs or business development companies;

losing RIC status;

actual or anticipated changes in our earnings or fluctuations in our operating results, or changes in the expectations of securities analysts;

changes in the value of our portfolio of investments;

realized losses in investments in our portfolio companies;

general economic conditions and trends;

inability to access the capital markets;

loss of a major funded source; or

departures of key personnel.

In the past, following periods of volatility in the market price of a company's securities, securities class action litigation has often been brought against that company. Due to the potential volatility of our stock price, we may be the target of securities litigation in the future. Securities litigation could result in substantial costs and could divert management's attention and resources from our business.

**Table of Contents**

**FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS; MARKET DATA**

The matters discussed in this prospectus, as well as in future oral and written statements by management of Hercules Technology Growth Capital, that are forward-looking statements are based on current management expectations that involve substantial risks and uncertainties which could cause actual results to differ materially from the results expressed in, or implied by, these forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements relate to future events or our future financial performance. We generally identify forward-looking statements by terminology such as may, will, should, expects, plans, anticipates, could, intends, target, projects, contemplates, believes, estimates, pre the negative of these terms or other similar words. Important assumptions include our ability to originate new investments, achieve certain margins and levels of profitability, the availability of additional capital, and the ability to maintain certain debt to asset ratios. In light of these and other uncertainties, the inclusion of a projection or forward-looking statement in this prospectus should not be regarded as a representation by us that our plans or objectives will be achieved. The forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus include statements as to:

our future operating results;

our business prospects and the prospects of our prospective portfolio companies;

the impact of investments that we expect to make;

our informal relationships with third parties;

the dependence of our future success on the general economy and its impact on the industries in which we invest;

the ability of our portfolio companies to achieve their objectives;

our expected financings and investments;

our regulatory structure and tax status;

our ability to operate as a business development company and a RIC;

the adequacy of our cash resources and working capital; and

the timing of cash flows, if any, from the operations of our portfolio companies.

For a discussion of factors that could cause our actual results to differ from forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus, please see the discussion under Risk Factors. You should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements. The forward-looking statements made in this prospectus relate only to events as of the date on which the statements are made.

This prospectus contains third-party estimates and data regarding valuations of venture capital-backed companies. This data was reported by Dow Jones VentureSource, an independent venture capital industry research company which we refer to as VentureSource. VentureSource is commonly relied upon as an information source in the venture capital industry. Although we have not independently verified any such data, we believe that the industry information contained in such releases and data tables and included in this prospectus is reliable.

## Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

We have compiled certain industry estimates presented in this prospectus from internally generated information and data. While we believe our estimates are reliable, they have not been verified by any independent sources. The estimates are based on a number of assumptions, including increasing investment in venture capital and private equity-backed companies. Actual results may differ from projections and estimates, and this market may not grow at the rates projected, or at all. If this market fails to grow at projected rates, our business and the market price of our common stock could be materially adversely affected.

**Table of Contents**

**USE OF PROCEEDS**

We intend to use the net proceeds from selling shares of common stock for general corporate purposes, which include investing in debt and equity securities and other general corporate purposes. The supplement to this prospectus relating to an offering will more fully identify the use of proceeds from such offering.

We anticipate that substantially all of the net proceeds from any offering of our shares of common stock will be used as described above within twelve months, but in no event longer than two years. Pending such uses and investments, we will invest the net proceeds primarily in cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities or high-quality debt securities maturing in one year or less from the time of investment. Our ability to achieve our investment objective may be limited to the extent that the net proceeds of any offering, pending full investment, are held in lower yielding short-term instruments.

**Table of Contents****PRICE RANGE OF COMMON STOCK AND DISTRIBUTIONS**

Our common stock is traded on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol HTGC.

The following table sets forth the range of high and low sales prices of our common stock as reported on the Nasdaq Global Select Market, the sales price as a percentage of net asset value and the dividends declared by us for each fiscal quarter. The stock quotations are interdealer quotations and do not include markups, markdowns or commissions.

	NAV <sup>(1)</sup>	Price Range		Premium/ Discount of High Sales Price to NAV	Premium/ Discount of Low Sales Price to NAV	Cash Dividend per Share <sup>(2)</sup>
		High	Low			
<b>2008</b>						
First quarter	\$ 12.28	\$ 12.75	\$ 9.59	103.8%	78.1%	\$ 0.340
Second quarter	\$ 12.21	\$ 11.32	\$ 8.93	92.7%	73.1%	\$ 0.340
Third quarter	\$ 12.25	\$ 11.35	\$ 7.95	92.7%	64.9%	\$ 0.340
Fourth quarter	\$ 11.56	\$ 10.24	\$ 4.57	88.6%	39.5%	\$ 0.340
<b>2009</b>						
First quarter	\$ 10.94	\$ 8.62	\$ 3.41	78.8%	31.2%	\$ 0.320
Second quarter	\$ 10.27	\$ 8.89	\$ 4.76	86.8%	46.3%	\$ 0.300
Third quarter	\$ 10.37	\$ 10.35	\$ 8.33	99.8%	80.3%	\$ 0.300
Fourth quarter	\$ 10.29	\$ 11.22	\$ 8.96	109.0%	87.1%	\$ 0.340
<b>2010</b>						
First quarter	*	\$ 11.31	\$ 7.90	*	*	\$ 0.200
Second quarter (April 14, 2010)	*	\$ 11.29	\$ 10.61	*	*	

(1) Net asset value per share is generally determined as of the last day in the relevant quarter and therefore may not reflect the net asset value per share on the date of the high and low sales prices. The net asset values shown are based on outstanding shares at the end of each period.

(2) Represents the dividend declared in the specified quarter. The dividend paid in the first quarter of 2009 was comprised of cash and stock.

\* Net asset value has not yet been calculated for this period.

The last reported price for our common stock on April 14, 2010 was \$10.96 per share.

Shares of business development companies may trade at a market price that is less than the value of the net assets attributable to those shares. The possibility that our shares of common stock will trade at a discount from net asset value or at premiums that are unsustainable over the long term are separate and distinct from the risk that our net asset value will decrease. At times, our shares of common stock have traded at a premium to net asset value and at times our shares of common stock have traded at a discount to the net assets attributable to those shares. It is not possible to predict whether the shares offered hereby will trade at, above, or below net asset value.



**Table of Contents****Dividends**

The following table summarizes our dividends declared and paid on all shares, including restricted stock, to date:

<b>Date Declared</b>	<b>Record Date</b>	<b>Payment Date</b>	<b>Amount Per Share</b>
October 27, 2005	November 1, 2005	November 17, 2005	\$ 0.025
December 9, 2005	January 6, 2006	January 27, 2006	0.300
April 3, 2006	April 10, 2006	May 5, 2006	0.300
July 19, 2006	July 31, 2006	August 28, 2006	0.300
October 16, 2006	November 6, 2006	December 1, 2006	0.300
February 7, 2007	February 19, 2007	March 19, 2007	0.300
May 3, 2007	May 16, 2007	June 18, 2007	0.300
August 2, 2007	August 16, 2007	September 17, 2007	0.300
November 1, 2007	November 16, 2007	December 17, 2007	0.300
February 7, 2008	February 15, 2008	March 17, 2008	0.300
May 8, 2008	May 16, 2008	June 16, 2008	0.340
August 7, 2008	August 15, 2008	September 15, 2008	0.340
November 6, 2008	November 14, 2008	December 15, 2008	0.340
February 12, 2009	February 23, 2009	March 30, 2009	0.320*
May 7, 2009	May 15, 2009	June 15, 2009	0.300
August 6, 2009	August 14, 2009	September 14, 2009	0.300
October 15, 2009	October 20, 2009	November 23, 2009	0.300
December 16, 2009	December 24, 2009	December 30, 2009	0.040
February 11, 2010	February 19, 2010	March 19, 2010	0.200
			\$ 5.205

\* Dividend paid in cash and stock

Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits would be treated first as a return of capital to the extent of the stockholder's tax basis, and any remaining distributions would be treated as a capital gain. The determination of the tax attributes of our distributions is made annually as of the end of our fiscal year based upon its taxable income for the full year and distributions paid for the full year, therefore a determination made on a quarterly basis may not be representative of the actual tax attributes of our distributions for a full year. During 2009, we distributed \$1.26 per share to our shareholders of which 100% was deemed to be a distribution of income and is considered ordinary income to our shareholders in 2009.

We intend to distribute quarterly dividends to our stockholders. In order to avoid certain excise taxes imposed on RICs, we currently intend to distribute during each calendar year an amount at least equal to the sum of (1) 98% of our ordinary income for the calendar year, (2) 98% of our capital gains in excess of capital losses for the one year period ending on October 31 of the calendar year, and (3) any ordinary income and net capital gains for the preceding year that were not distributed during such year. We will not be subject to excise taxes on amounts on which we are required to pay corporate income tax (such as retained net capital gains). In order to obtain the tax benefits applicable to RICs, we will be required to distribute to our stockholders with respect to each taxable year at least 90% of our ordinary income and realized net short-term capital gains in excess of realized net long-term capital losses.

Effective in 2009, our Board of Directors adopted a policy to distribute four quarterly distributions in an amount that approximates 90 to 95% of our taxable income. In addition, at the end of the year, we may also pay an additional special dividend, such that we may distribute approximately 98% of our annual taxable income in the year it was earned, instead of spilling over our excess taxable income.

**Table of Contents**

On February 12, 2009, the Board of Directors announced a dividend of \$0.32 per share to shareholders of record as of February 23, 2009 and payable on March 30, 2009. In accordance with the Internal Revenue Procedure released in January 2009, our Board of Directors determined that exactly 90% of the dividend would be paid in newly issued shares of our common stock and no more than 10% of the dividend would be paid in cash. On March 30, 2009, we paid a cash dividend of approximately \$1.1 million and issued approximately 1.9 million shares of common stock as stock dividend in satisfaction of the dividend declared on February 12, 2009. The market value per share of common stock used to compute the stock dividend (the Dividend Share Value ) is the volume weighted average price per share of HTGC's common stock for the three business day period of March 23, March 24 and March 25, 2009. We currently intend to retain for investment some or all of our net capital gains (that is, the excess of our realized net long-term capital gains over our realized net short-term capital losses) and to make deemed distributions to our stockholders of any retained net capital gains. If this happens, you will be treated as if you received an actual distribution of the capital gains we retain and then reinvested the net after-tax proceeds in our common stock. You also may be eligible to claim a tax credit (or, in certain circumstances, a tax refund) equal to your allocable share of the tax we paid on the capital gains deemed distributed to you. Please refer to Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations for further information regarding the consequences of our retention of net capital gains. To the extent that we do not retain all of our net capital gains, we will make actual distributions to our stockholders of such gains.

We can offer no assurance that we will achieve results that will permit the payment of any cash distributions and, if we issue senior securities, we will be prohibited from making distributions if doing so causes us to fail to maintain the asset coverage ratios stipulated by the 1940 Act or if distributions are limited by the terms of any of our borrowings. See Regulation.

We maintain an opt-out dividend reinvestment plan for our common stockholders. As a result, if we declare a dividend, cash dividends will be automatically reinvested in additional shares of our common stock unless the stockholder specifically opts out of the dividend reinvestment plan and chooses to receive cash dividends. See Dividend Reinvestment Plan.

Our ability to make distributions will be limited by the asset coverage requirements under the 1940 Act. For a more detailed discussion, see Regulation.

**Table of Contents**

**MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF  
FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**

*The following discussion should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes and other financial information appearing elsewhere in this report. In addition to historical information, the following discussion and other parts of this report contain forward-looking information that involves risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated by such forward-looking information due to the factors discussed under Risk Factors and Forward-Looking Statements; Market Data appearing elsewhere herein.*

**Overview**

We are a specialty finance company that provides debt and equity growth capital to technology-related companies at various stages of development which include select publicly listed companies and lower middle market companies. We primarily finance privately-held companies backed by leading venture capital and private equity firms, and may also finance custom select publicly traded companies that lack access to public capital or are sensitive to equity ownership dilution. We source our investments through our principal office located in Silicon Valley and we have additional offices in the Boston and Boulder.

Our goal is to be the leading structured debt financing provider of choice for venture capital and private equity backed technology-related companies requiring sophisticated and customized financing solutions. Our strategy is to evaluate and invest in a broad range of companies active in the technology and life science industries and to offer a full suite of growth capital products up and down the capital structure. We invest primarily in structured debt with warrants and, to a lesser extent, in senior debt and equity investments. Our equity ownership in our portfolio companies may represent a controlling interest. We use the term structured debt with warrants to refer to any debt investment, such as a senior or subordinated secured loan, that is coupled with an equity component, including warrants, options or rights to purchase common or preferred stock. Our structured debt with warrants investments will typically be secured by some or all of the assets of the portfolio company.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio total return by generating current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity-related investments. We are an internally managed, non-diversified closed-end investment company that has elected to be regulated as a business development company under the 1940 Act. As a business development company, we are required to comply with certain regulatory requirements. For instance, we generally have to invest at least 70% of our total assets in qualifying assets, including securities of private U.S. companies, cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities and high-quality debt investments that mature in one year or less.

From incorporation through December 31, 2005, we were taxed as a corporation under Subchapter C of the Internal Revenue Code (the Code). We are treated for federal income tax purposes as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code as of January 1, 2006. To qualify for the benefits allowable to a RIC, we must, among other things, meet certain source-of-income and asset diversification and income distribution requirements. Pursuant to this election, we generally will not have to pay corporate-level taxes on any income that we distribute to our stockholders. However, such an election and qualification to be treated as a RIC requires that we comply with certain requirements contained in Subchapter M of the Code. For example, a RIC must meet certain requirements, including source-of-income, asset diversification and income distribution requirements. The income source requirement mandates that we receive 90% or more of our income from qualified earnings, typically referred to as good income. Qualified earnings may exclude such income as management fees received in connection with our SBIC or other potential outside managed funds and certain other fees.

Our portfolio is comprised of, and we anticipate that our portfolio will continue to be comprised of, investments primarily in technology-related companies at various stages of their development. Consistent with

## **Table of Contents**

regulatory requirements, we invest primarily in United States based companies and to a lesser extent in foreign companies. During 2008 and 2009, our investing emphasis has been primarily on private companies following or in connection with a subsequent institutional round of equity financing, which we refer to as expansion-stage companies and private companies in later rounds of financing and certain public companies, which we refer to as established-stage companies and lower middle market companies. We expect to continue this investment strategy in 2010 and, to a limited amount, increase investments in early stage companies as the investment activity by venture capitalist increases in this sector. We have also historically focused our investment activities in private companies following or in connection with the first institutional round of financing, which we refer to as emerging-growth companies.

### **Current Economic and Market Environment**

The U.S. capital and credit markets have been experiencing extreme disruption and volatility since the summer of 2008 as evidenced by a lack of liquidity in the debt capital markets, significant write-offs in the financial services sector, the repricing of credit risk in the broadly syndicated credit market and the failure of many major financial institutions. These events have contributed to a continuing severe economic recession that is materially and adversely impacting the broader financial and credit markets and reducing the availability of credit and equity capital for the markets as a whole and financial services firms in particular, including us.

At the same time, the venture capital market for the technology-related companies in which we invest has been active, but is continuing to show signs of stress and reduced investment activity. Therefore, to the extent we have capital available; we believe this is an opportune time to invest on a limited basis in the structured lending market for technology-related companies. While today's economy creates potentially new attractive lending opportunities, our outlook remains cautious for at least the next two quarters as the economic environment may cause additional portfolio stress. Due to the continuing economic slowdown and due to reduced venture capital investment activity, we determined that it would be prudent to substantially curtail new investment activity in 2009 in order to have working capital available to support our existing portfolio companies. These changes were made to manage our credit performance, maintain adequate liquidity and manage our operating expenses in this extremely challenging and unprecedented credit environment.

Like many other companies, we have continued to engage in activities to deleverage our balance sheet and strengthen cash resources available to us.

As discussed herein, on March 25, 2009, we paid off all outstanding borrowings under the Citigroup Global Markets Realty Corp. and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc. credit facility ( the Credit Facility ).

To minimize disruptions in our business as a result of current market conditions, we entered into an amendment with Wells Fargo Foothill, effective April 30, 2009, to decrease the minimum tangible net worth covenant from \$360 million to \$250 million, as discussed in the Wells Facility section of Borrowings. In February 2010 we extended the facility by one year to August 2011.

As of December 31, 2009, the maximum statutory limit on the dollar amount of outstanding debentures guaranteed by the U.S. Small Business Administration ( SBA ) issued to a single small business investment company ( SBIC ) is \$150.0 million. As of December 31, 2009, Hercules Technology II, L.P. ( HT II ), our wholly owned SBIC subsidiary, has regulatory capital of \$68.55 million and a commitment from the SBA to issue debentures up to \$137.1 million, of which approximately \$130.6 million was outstanding as of December 31, 2009. There is no assurance that HT II will be able to draw up to the maximum limit available under the SBIC program. In addition, we are eligible to be approved for a second license which would allow us to draw an aggregate of \$225 million with an additional investment of \$37.5 million of regulatory capital. We submitted our application to obtain a second lender license, and, in February 2010, we responded to the SBA's comment letter relating to our second lender license. We anticipate that the license should be approved during the spring of 2010; however there can be no assurance that the SBA will grant us a second lender license or when the license will be approved.

**Table of Contents**

In addition, to strengthen our liquidity position and preserve cash, in March 2009, 90% of our first quarter 2009 dividend was paid with approximately 1.9 million newly issued shares of common stock and 10% or approximately \$1.1 million, was paid in cash.

In February 2010, we completed our credit facility negotiations with Union Bank providing a one year credit facility of \$20.0 million. Pricing of the credit facility is LIBOR plus 2.25% with a floor of 4.0%, an advance rate of 50% against eligible loans, and secured by loans in the borrowing base.

**Portfolio and Investment Activity**

The total value of our investment portfolio was \$370.4 million at December 31, 2009, as compared to \$581.3 million at December 31, 2008. During the year ended December 31, 2009, we had debt commitments to 21 portfolio companies totaling \$180.7 million and funded \$95.5 million under these commitments and commitments from prior years. We also made equity investments totaling approximately \$3.0 million during the year ended December 31, 2009. The fair values of our equity and warrant portfolios at December 31, 2009 were \$35.1 million and \$14.4 million, respectively. For the year ended December 31, 2009, we recognized net unrealized depreciation on our debt, and warrant portfolios of approximately \$4.7 million and \$1.4 million and net unrealized appreciation on our equity portfolio of approximately \$7.3 million, in accordance with ASC Topic 820, *Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*, ( ASC 820 ), formerly known as FAS 157.

At December 31, 2009, we had unfunded contractual commitments of \$11.7 million to five portfolio companies. These commitments will be subject to the same underwriting and ongoing portfolio maintenance as are the on-balance sheet financial instruments that we hold. Since these commitments may expire without being drawn upon, the total commitment amount does not necessarily represent future cash requirements. In addition, we executed six non-binding term sheets for approximately \$93.5 million for proposed future commitments. Non-binding outstanding term sheets are subject to completion of Hercules' due diligence and final approval process as well as negotiation of definitive documentation with the prospective portfolio companies. Not all non-binding term sheets are expected to close and do not necessarily represent future cash requirements.

In response to the current lack of liquidity in the debt and capital markets, during 2008 and 2009 we slowed our origination activities, adopting a slow and steady investment strategy and shifting our focus to established-stage companies. These changes were made to manage our credit performance, maintain adequate liquidity and to manage our operating expenses in this extremely challenging and unprecedented credit environment. In 2009, we continued our origination and follow-on investment activity consistent with our slow and steady investment strategy. Investing in accordance with this strategy may result in limited, no, or negative growth until market conditions improve, and may negatively impact our operating results.

We receive payments in our loan portfolio based on scheduled amortization of the outstanding balances. In addition, we receive repayments of some of our loans prior to their scheduled maturity date. The frequency or volume of these repayments may fluctuate significantly from period to period. During the year ended December 31, 2009, we received normal principal repayments of \$110.6 million, and early repayments and working line of credit paydowns totaling \$171.9 million. Total portfolio investment activity (exclusive of unearned income) as of and for each of the years ended December 31, 2009 and 2008 was as follows:

(in millions)	December 31, 2009	December 31, 2008
Beginning Portfolio	\$ 581.3	\$ 530.0
Debt investments	95.5	346.0
Equity Investments	2.9	5.9
Sale of investments	(36.5)	(17.5)
Principal payments received on investments	(110.6)	(110.3)
Early pay-offs and recoveries	(171.9)	(159.6)
Accretion of loan discounts and paid-in-kind principal	8.4	8.2
Net change in unrealized appreciation on investments	1.3	(21.4)
Ending Portfolio	\$ 370.4	\$ 581.3

**Table of Contents**

The following table shows the fair value of our portfolio of investments by asset class as of December 31, 2009 and December 31, 2008 (excluding unearned income):

(in thousands)	December 31, 2009		December 31, 2008	
	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio
Senior secured debt with warrants	\$ 229,454	61.9%	\$ 445,574	76.6%
Senior secured debt	99,725	26.9%	106,266	18.2%
Preferred stock	22,875	6.2%	21,249	3.8%
Senior debt-second lien with warrants	6,173	1.7%	6,097	1.0%
Common Stock	12,210	3.3%	2,115	0.4%
	\$ 370,437	100.0%	\$ 581,301	100.0%

A summary of the company's investment portfolio at value by geographic location is as follows:

(in thousands)	December 31, 2009		December 31, 2008	
	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio
United States	\$ 344,984	93.1%	\$ 537,470	92.5%
Canada	21,567	5.8%	21,210	3.6%
Israel	1,310	0.4%	19,621	3.4%
Netherlands	2,576	0.7%	3,000	0.5%
	\$ 370,437	100.0%	\$ 581,301	100.0%

Our portfolio companies are primarily privately held expansion-and established-stage companies in the biopharmaceutical, communications and networking, consumer and business products, electronics and computers, energy, information services, internet consumer and business services, medical devices, semiconductor and software industry sectors. These sectors are characterized by high margins, high growth rates, consolidation and product and market extension opportunities. Value is often vested in intangible assets and intellectual property.

The largest companies vary from year to year as new loans are recorded and loans pay off. Loan revenue, consisting of interest, fees, and recognition of gains on equity interests, can fluctuate dramatically when a loan is paid off or a related equity interest is sold. Revenue recognition in any given year can be highly concentrated among several portfolio companies. For years ended December 31, 2009 and 2008, our ten largest portfolio companies represented approximately 51.5% and 33.6% of the total fair value of our investments in portfolio companies, respectively. At December 31, 2009 and 2008, we had three and six investments, respectively, that represented 5% or more of our net assets. At December 31, 2009, we had five equity investments representing approximately 50.3% of the total fair value of our equity investments, and each represented 5% or more of the total fair value of our equity investments. At December 31, 2008, we had six equity investments which represented approximately 43.8% of the total fair value of our equity investments, and each represented 5% or more of the total fair value of such investments.

As required by the 1940 Act, the Company classifies its investments by level of control. Control Investments are defined in the 1940 Act as investments in those companies that the Company is deemed to Control. Generally, under the 1940 Act, the Company is deemed to Control a company in which it has invested if it owns 25% or more of the voting securities of such company or has greater than 50% representation on its board. Affiliate Investments are investments in those companies that are Affiliated Companies of the Company, as defined in the 1940 Act, which are not Control Investments. The Company is deemed to be an Affiliate of a company in which it has invested if it owns 5% or more but less than 25% of the voting securities of such company. Non-Control/Non-Affiliate Investments are those investments that are neither Control Investments nor Affiliate Investments.

**Table of Contents**

At December 31, 2009, we had an investment in one portfolio company deemed to be a Control Investment and no investments in 2008 were deemed to be Control Investments. \$1.4 million in investment income was derived from our debt investments in this portfolio company. No realized gains or losses related to Control Investments were recognized during the years ended December 31, 2009, 2008 and 2007. We recognized unrealized appreciation of approximately \$8.4 million on Control Investments in 2009. No unrealized appreciation or depreciation was recognized on Control Investments during the year end December 31, 2008 and 2007.

At December 31, 2009, the Company had an investment in one portfolio company deemed to be an Affiliate. Income derived from this investment was zero, as this is a non-income producing equity investment. At December 31, 2008, the Company had three portfolio companies deemed to be Affiliates. For the year ended December 31, 2008, income derived from three investments was less than \$230,000. One company that was an Affiliate in 2008 performed a capital raise in 2009 which resulted in our ownership percentage decreasing to less than 5% of the voting securities in the portfolio company. As a result, this portfolio company is no longer an Affiliate. We recognized a realized loss of approximately \$4.0 million in the second quarter of 2009 in a portfolio company that was an Affiliate prior to the disposal of the investment. No realized gains or losses related to Affiliates were recognized in 2008 or 2007. During the year end December 31, 2009, we recognized unrealized appreciation of approximately \$4.0 million related to Affiliates, primarily attributable to the reversal of unrealized depreciation to realized loss. During the years end December 31, 2008 and 2007, we recognized unrealized depreciation of approximately \$3.3 million and \$1.7 million on Affiliate investments, respectively.

The following table shows the fair value of our portfolio by industry sector at December 31, 2009 and December 31, 2008 (excluding unearned income):

(in thousands)	December 31, 2009		December 31, 2008	
	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio
Software	\$ 61,647	16.6%	\$ 80,885	13.9%
Communications & networking	58,088	15.7%	118,133	20.3%
Drug discovery	51,848	14.0%	70,320	12.1%
Information services	37,740	10.2%	63,533	10.9%
Consumer & business products	25,467	6.9%	25,250	4.3%
Specialty pharmaceuticals	25,193	6.8%	29,870	5.1%
Drug delivery	21,493	5.8%	24,952	4.3%
Internet consumer & business services	20,352	5.5%	19,759	3.4%
Electronics & computer hardware	17,701	4.8%	40,481	7.0%
Therapeutic	13,470	3.6%	15,661	2.7%
Semiconductors	11,481	3.1%	17,766	3.1%
Diagnostic	11,399	3.1%	13,494	2.3%
Biotechnology tools	9,669	2.6%	29,124	5.0%
Surgical Devices	2,410	0.7%	10,013	1.7%
Media/Content/Info	2,375	0.6%	17,667	3.1%
Energy	104		4,393	0.8%
	\$ 370,437	100.0%	\$ 581,301	100.0%

**Table of Contents**

We use an investment grading system, which grades each debt investment on a scale of 1 to 5, to characterize and monitor our expected level of returns on the debt investments in our portfolio with 1 being the highest quality. See Business Investment Process Loan and Compliance Administration. The following table shows the distribution of our outstanding debt investments on the 1 to 5 investment grading scale at fair value as of December 31, 2009 and 2008, respectively:

(in thousands)	December 31, 2009		December 31, 2008	
	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio
<b>Investment Grading</b>				
1	\$ 15,777	4.9%	\$ 22,293	4.1%
2	147,520	46.0	326,106	60.4
3	108,716	33.9	159,980	29.6
4	38,384	11.9	29,460	5.5
5	10,505	3.3	2,215	0.4
	\$ 320,902	100.00%	\$ 540,054	100.00%

As of December 31, 2009, our investments had a weighted average investment grading of 2.71 as compared to 2.39 at December 31, 2008. We intend for our shift in focus to expansion- and established-stage companies, to assist us in maintaining our portfolio credit quality despite current market volatility. However, there is no guarantee that this strategy will be successful. Our policy is to lower the grading on our portfolio companies as they approach the point in time when they will require additional equity capital. Additionally, we may downgrade our portfolio companies if they are not meeting our financing criteria and their respective business plans. Various companies in our portfolio will require additional funding in the near term or have not met their business plans and have therefore been downgraded until their funding is complete or their operations improve. Risk ratings are used by us to indicate companies requiring clear monitoring and are not generally indicative of loan valuation. At December 31, 2009, 17 portfolio companies were graded 3 and 4 portfolio companies were graded 4, as compared to 19 and 5 portfolio companies, respectively, at December 31, 2008. At December 31, 2009 and 2008, 5 portfolio companies were graded 5.

The effective yield on our debt investments during the year was 16.7% and was attributed in part to interest charges and fees related to loan restructurings and acceleration of fee income recognition from early loan repayments. The overall weighted average yield to maturity of our loan obligations was approximately 13.6% at December 31, 2009, increased slightly compared to 12.9% at December 31, 2008, attributed to increased investments to both expansion and established-stage companies and asset based financing offered to more mature middle market companies. The weighted average yield to maturity is computed using the interest rates in effect at the inception of each of the loans, and includes amortization of the loan facility fees, commitment fees and market premiums or discounts over the expected life of the debt investments, weighted by their respective costs when averaged and based on the assumption that all contractual loan commitments have been fully funded and held to maturity.

We generate revenue in the form of interest income, primarily from our investments in debt securities, and commitment and facility fees. Fees generated in connection with our debt investments are recognized over the life of the loan or, in some cases, recognized as earned. In addition, we generate revenue in the form of capital gains, if any, on warrants or other equity-related securities that we acquire from our portfolio companies. Our investments generally range from \$1.0 million to \$25.0 million. Our debt investments have a term of between two and seven years and typically bear interest at a rate ranging from prime to 17% as of December 31, 2009. In addition to the cash yields received on our loans, in some instances, our loans may also include any of the following: end-of-term payments, exit fees, balloon payment fees, PIK provisions, prepayment fees, and diligence fees, which may be required to be included in income prior to receipt. In most cases, we collateralize our investments by obtaining security interests in our portfolio companies' assets, which may include their intellectual property. In other cases, we may obtain a negative pledge covering a company's intellectual property.



---

**Table of Contents**

At December 31, 2009, approximately 71.9% of our portfolio company loans were secured by a first priority security in all of the assets of the portfolio company, 1.9% of our portfolio company loan was secured by a second priority security in all of the assets of the portfolio company and 26.2% of our portfolio company loans were prohibited from pledging or encumbering their intellectual property. Interest on debt securities is generally payable monthly, with amortization of principal typically occurring over the term of the security for emerging-growth, expansion-stage and established-stage companies. In addition, certain loans may include an interest-only period ranging from three to eighteen months for emerging-growth and expansion-stage companies and longer for established-stage companies. In limited instances in which we choose to defer amortization of the loan for a period of time from the date of the initial investment, the principal amount of the debt securities and any accrued but unpaid interest become due at the maturity date.

Our investments in structured debt with warrants also generally have equity enhancement features, typically in the form of warrants or other equity-related securities designed to provide us with an opportunity for capital appreciation. As of December 31, 2009, we have received warrants in connection with the majority of our debt investments in our portfolio companies. We currently hold warrants in 83 portfolio companies, with a fair value of approximately \$14.5 million. The fair value of the warrant portfolio has decreased by 19% as compared to the fair value of \$17.9 million at December 31, 2008, primarily due to a decrease in fair value. These warrant holdings would allow us to invest approximately \$48.7 million if such warrants are exercised. However, these warrants may not appreciate in value and, in fact, may decline in value. Accordingly, we may not be able to realize gains from our warrant interests.

**Results of Operations****Comparison of periods ended December 31, 2009 and 2008*****Operating Income***

Interest income totaled approximately \$62.2 million and \$67.3 million for 2009 and 2008, respectively. The decrease in interest income was directly related to decreases in investment assets. In 2009 and 2008, interest income included approximately \$6.7 million and \$4.3 million of income from accrued exit fees. Income from commitment, facility and loan related fees such as amendment fees and pre-payment penalties totaled approximately \$12.1 million and \$8.6 million for 2009 and 2008, respectively. At December 31, 2009 and 2008, we had approximately \$2.4 million and \$6.9 million of deferred income related to commitment and facility fees, respectively. The decrease in deferred income was attributed to the amortization of fee income and the lower deferred income due to lower investment originations.

***Operating Expenses***

Operating expenses totaled approximately \$31.2 million and \$35.9 million during 2009 and 2008, respectively. Operating expenses for the years ended December 31, 2009 and 2008 included interest expense, loan fees and unused commitment fees of approximately \$11.3 million and \$15.8 million, respectively. The 28.6% decrease in interest expense was primarily due to lower outstanding loan balances on our credit facilities and lower cost of financing. The average debt balance outstanding in 2009 is \$147.4 million as compared to \$196.9 million in 2008. The weighted average cost of debt was approximately 7.7% at December 31, 2009 as compared to 8.0% at December 31, 2008. Employee compensation and benefits were approximately \$10.7 million and \$11.6 million during 2009 and 2008, respectively. The decrease in employee compensation and benefits is primarily due to the reduction in workforce in the first quarter of 2009. General and administrative expenses, including legal and accounting fees, insurance premiums, rent and various other expenses totaled \$7.3 million and \$6.9 million in 2009 and 2008 respectively. We incurred approximately \$1.9 million of stock-based compensation expense in 2009 as compared to \$1.6 million in 2008 due to additional option and restricted stock grants made in 2009. We anticipate that operating expenses will increase over the next twelve months as we expanded our investment and operations team in fourth quarter of 2009 and in anticipation of building our investment portfolio in 2010.

**Table of Contents*****Net Investment Income Before Income Tax Expense and Investment Gains and Losses***

Net investment income before income tax expense for the year ended December 31, 2009 totaled \$43.1 million as compared with a net investment income before income tax expense in 2008 of approximately \$40.0 million. The changes are made up of the items described above under Operating Income and Operating Expenses.

***Net Investment Realized Gains and Losses and Unrealized Appreciation and Depreciation***

Realized gains or losses are measured by the difference between the net proceeds from the repayment or sale and the cost basis of the investment without regard to unrealized appreciation or depreciation previously recognized, and include investments charged off during the period, net of recoveries. Net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation primarily reflects the change in portfolio investment values during the reporting period, including the reversal of previously recorded unrealized appreciation or depreciation when gains or losses are realized.

In 2009, we generated realized gains totaling approximately \$3.7 million primarily due to the sale of warrants and common stock of four portfolio companies. We recognized realized losses in 2009 of approximately \$34.5 million on the disposition of investments in sixteen portfolio companies. We recognized realized gains of approximately \$6.9 million during the year ended December 31, 2008 from the sale of common stock of nine portfolio companies. We recognized realized losses in 2008 of approximately \$4.3 million on the disposition of investments in ten portfolio companies. A summary of realized gains and losses for the years end December 31, 2009 and 2008 is as follows:

(in thousands)	December 31,	
	2009	2008
Realized gains	\$ 3,738	\$ 6,925
Realized losses	(34,539)	(4,282)
Net realized gains (losses)	\$ (30,801)	\$ 2,643

For the year ended December 31, 2009, net unrealized investment appreciation totaled approximately \$1.3 million and for the year ended December 31, 2008, net unrealized depreciation totaled approximately \$21.4 million. The year to year increase is primarily due to the reversal of unrealized depreciation to realized losses. The net unrealized appreciation and depreciation of investments is based on portfolio asset valuations determined in good faith by our Board of Directors. During the year ended December 31, 2009, net unrealized investment appreciation recognized by the company was reduced by approximately \$29,000 for a warrant participation agreement with Citigroup. For a more detailed discussion, see the discussion set forth below under Borrowings. The following table itemizes the change in net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) of investments for 2009 and 2008:

(in thousands)	December 31,	
	2009	2008
Gross unrealized appreciation on portfolio investments	\$ 42,272	\$ 6,139
Gross unrealized depreciation on portfolio investments	(73,969)	(25,250)
Reversal of prior period net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) upon a realization event	32,937	(2,458)
Citigroup Warrant Participation	29	143
Net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on portfolio investments	\$ 1,269	\$ (21,426)

***Income and Excise Taxes***

We account for income taxes in accordance with the provisions of ASC 740, Income Taxes, formerly known as FAS 109 which requires that deferred income taxes be determined based upon the estimated future tax effects

## **Table of Contents**

of differences between the financial statement and tax basis of assets and liabilities given the provisions of the enacted tax law. Valuation allowances are used to reduce deferred tax assets to the amount likely to be realized.

Through December 31, 2005, we were taxed under Subchapter C of the Code. We elected to be treated as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code with the filing of our 2006 federal income tax return. Provided we continue to qualify as a RIC, our income generally will not be subject to federal income or excise taxes to the extent we make the requisite distributions to stockholders. At December 31, 2009, no excised tax provision was recorded since we have paid out distributable earnings. See Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations. Of the dividends declared during the year ended December 31, 2009, 100% was comprised of ordinary income. In 2008, of the dividends paid, \$1.23 was comprised of ordinary income and \$0.09 was comprised of capital gains.

### ***Net Increase in Net Assets Resulting from Operations and Earnings Per Share***

For the year ended December 31, 2009 net increase in net assets resulting from operations totaled approximately \$13.6 million compared to net increase in net assets of approximately \$21.0 million for the period ended December 31, 2008. These changes are made up of the items previously described.

Basic and fully diluted net change in net assets per common share were \$0.38 and \$0.37, respectively, for the year ended December 31, 2009, compared to both basic net and fully diluted net change in net assets per share of \$0.64 for the year ended December 31, 2008.

### **Comparison of periods ended December 31, 2008 and 2007**

#### ***Operating Income***

Interest income totaled approximately \$67.3 million and \$48.8 million for 2008 and 2007, respectively. In 2008 and 2007, interest income included approximately \$4.3 million and \$1.8 million of income from accrued exit fees, respectively. Income from commitment and facility fees totaled approximately \$8.6 million and \$5.1 million for 2008 and 2007, respectively. The increase in both interest and fee income was directly related to increases in origination activity, as net loan investments at fair value grew by \$57.9 million by the end of 2008. At December 31, 2008 and 2007, we had approximately \$6.9 million and \$6.6 million of deferred income related to commitment and facility fees.

#### ***Operating Expenses***

Operating expenses totaled approximately \$35.9 million and \$21.4 million during 2008 and 2007, respectively. Operating expenses for the years ended December 31, 2008 and 2007 included interest expense, loan fees and unused commitment fees of approximately \$15.8 million and \$5.7 million, respectively. The 177.2% increase in interest expense was primarily due to a higher average debt balance of \$196.9 million in 2008 as compared to \$66.3 million in 2007. The weighted average cost of debt was approximately 8% at December 31, 2008 as compared to 6.5% at December 31, 2007. The increase was primarily due to higher interest rates and fees under our Credit Facility after the loan was amended in May 2008 and as we entered into the amortization period on October 31, 2008. Employee compensation and benefits were approximately \$11.6 million and \$9.1 million during 2008 and 2007, respectively. The increase in employee compensation and benefits is due to increased number of employees from 38 to 45 and salary increases at the beginning of the year. General and administrative expenses include legal and accounting fees, insurance premiums, rent and various other expenses totaling \$6.9 million and \$5.4 million in 2008 and 2007 respectively.

#### ***Net Investment Income Before Income Tax Expense and Investment Gains and Losses***

Net investment income before income tax expense for the year ended December 31, 2008 totaled \$40.0 million as compared with a net investment income before income tax expense in 2007 of approximately \$32.5 million. This change is made up of the items described above.

**Table of Contents*****Net Investment Realized Gains and Losses and Unrealized Appreciation and Depreciation***

Realized gains or losses are measured by the difference between the net proceeds from the repayment or sale and the cost basis of the investment without regard to unrealized appreciation or depreciation previously recognized, and include investments charged off during the period, net of recoveries. Net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation primarily reflects the change in portfolio investment values during the reporting period, including the reversal of previously recorded unrealized appreciation or depreciation when gains or losses are realized.

In 2008, we generated realized gains totaling approximately \$6.9 million from the sale of common stock of two software, two drug discovery, one advanced specialty materials & chemicals, one therapeutic, one diagnostic, one communications & networking and one computer hardware portfolio companies. We recognized realized losses in 2008 of approximately \$4.3 million on the disposition of investments in ten portfolio companies. We recognized realized gains of approximately \$3.6 million during the year ended December 31, 2007 from seven portfolio companies. We recognized realized losses in 2007 of approximately \$800,000 on the disposition of warrants of six portfolio companies. A summary of realized and unrealized gains and losses for the years end December 31, 2008 and 2007 is as follows:

(in millions)	December 31,	
	2008	2007
Realized gains	\$ 6.9	\$ 3.6
Realized losses	(4.3)	(0.8)
Net realized gains	\$ 2.6	\$ 2.8

For the year ended December 31, 2008, net unrealized investment depreciation totaled approximately \$21.4 million and for the year ended December 31, 2007, net unrealized appreciation totaled approximately \$7.3 million. The year to year decrease primarily reflects the impact in the general decline in the financial market in the second half of 2008. The net unrealized appreciation and depreciation of investments is based on portfolio asset valuations determined in good faith by our Board of Directors. As of December 31, 2008, the net unrealized investment appreciation recognized by the company was reduced by approximately \$143,000 for a warrant participation agreement with Citigroup. For a more detailed discussion, see the discussion set forth below under *Borrowings*. The following table itemizes the change in net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) of investments for 2008 and 2007:

(\$ in millions)	December 31,	
	2008	2007
Gross unrealized appreciation on portfolio investments	\$ 6.1	\$ 17.7
Gross unrealized depreciation on portfolio investments	(25.2)	(9.4)
Reversal of prior period net unrealized appreciation upon a realization	(2.4)	(0.3)
Citigroup Warrant Participation	0.1	(0.7)
Net unrealized appreciation/(depreciation) on portfolio investments	\$ (21.4)	\$ 7.3

***Income Taxes***

Through December 31, 2005 we were taxed under Subchapter C of the Code. We elected to be treated as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code with the filing of our 2006 federal income tax return. Provided we continue to qualify as a RIC, our income generally will not be subject to federal income or excise taxes to the extent we make the requisite distributions to stockholders. At December 31, 2008, we elected to pay an excise tax of approximately \$203,000 on approximately \$5.0 million of undistributed earnings from operations and capital gains that we distributed in 2009. Of the dividends declared during the year ended December 31, 2008, \$1.23 comprised ordinary income and \$0.09 comprised long-term capital gains.

## **Table of Contents**

### ***Net Increase in Net Assets Resulting from Operations and Earnings Per Share***

For the year ended December 31, 2008, net income totaled approximately \$21.0 million compared to net income of approximately \$42.4 million for the period ended December 31, 2007. These changes are made up of the items previously described.

Basic and fully diluted net income per share were both \$0.64, for the year ended December 31, 2008, compared to basic net income per share of \$1.50 and fully diluted net income per share of \$1.49 for the year ended December 31, 2007.

### **Financial Condition, Liquidity and Capital Resources**

At December 31, 2009, we had approximately \$124.8 million in cash and cash equivalents and available borrowing capacity of \$50.0 million under our Wells Credit Facility and \$19.4 million availability under the SBA program, subject to existing terms and advance rates. Of this amount, \$12.9 million requires commitment approval from the SBA and investment of additional regulatory capital of \$6.45 million. We primarily invest cash on hand in interest bearing deposit accounts.

For the year ended December 31, 2009, net cash provided by operating activities totaled approximately \$225.9 million as compared to cash used by operations of \$27.5 million in 2008. This increase was due primarily due to principal payments received on our debt investments of \$282.5 million offset by \$98.4 million used for investments, as compared to \$269.9 million of proceeds received in principal payments offset by \$351.9 million used for investments in our portfolio companies in 2008. Cash used in investing activities for the year ended December 31, 2009, totaled approximately \$494,000 and was primarily used for the purchase of computer equipment, leasehold improvements and office furniture and other long term assets. Net cash reductions attributable to financing activities totaled \$117.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2009. In 2009, we had borrowings of \$3.4 million of SBA debentures, net paydowns of \$99.0 million from our credit facilities; we made cash dividend payments of \$31.5 million and paid fees of \$147,000 on our credit facilities and debenture borrowings.

As of December 31, 2009, net assets totaled \$366.5 million, with a net asset value per share of \$10.29. We intend to generate additional cash primarily from future borrowings as well as cash flows from operations, including income earned from investments in our portfolio companies and, to a lesser extent, from the temporary investment of cash in U.S. government securities and other high-quality debt investments that mature in one year or less. Our primary use of funds will be investments in portfolio companies and cash distributions to holders of our common stock. After we have used our current capital resources, we expect to raise additional capital to support our future growth through future equity offerings, issuances of senior securities and/or future borrowings, to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act. To the extent we determine to raise additional equity through an offering of our common stock at a price below net asset value, which we have received shareholder approval to do, existing investors will experience dilution. However, there can be no assurance that these capital resources will be available in the near term given the credit constraints of the banking and capital markets.

As required by the 1940 Act, our asset coverage must be at least 200% after each issuance of senior securities. As of December 31, 2009, we are in compliance with the asset coverage ratio.

As of December 31, 2009, we had \$130.6 million under the SBA program and there were no outstanding borrowings under the Wells Facility. As of December 31, 2009, there were \$76.3 million of loans in the Wells Facility collateral pools and, based on eligible loans in the pools and existing advance rates, we have access to approximately \$8.2 million of borrowing capacity available under the \$50.0 million currently available through the Wells Facility.

In addition, Citigroup has an equity participation right of 10% of the realized gains on certain warrants collateralized under the Credit Facility. However, no additional warrants are included in collateral subsequent to the facility amendment on May 2, 2007. See Note 3 to the consolidated financial statements for discussion of the participation right.

**Table of Contents**

On September 27, 2006, HT II received a license to operate as a Small Business Investment Company under the SBIC program and is able to borrow funds from the SBA against eligible previously approved investments and additional contributions to regulatory capital. In February 2009, the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 included a provision increasing the current limit to \$150.0 million, the increase of approximately \$12.9 million from the previous \$137.1 million limit as of December 31, 2008, subject to periodic adjustments by the SBA. At December 31, 2009 we had a commitment from the SBA permitting us to draw up to \$137.1 million. The maximum borrowing available from the SBA could be increased to \$150.0 million with an additional regulatory capital investment by us of approximately \$6.5 million, subject to SBA approval. At December 31, 2009, we had a net investment of \$68.55 million in HT II, and there are investments in 43 companies with a fair value of approximately \$124.5 million. Investments held by HT II comprised approximately 33.6% of the fair value of our investments at December 31, 2009. The Company is the sole limited partner of HT II and HTM is the general partner. HTM is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company. If HT II fails to comply with applicable SBA regulations, the SBA could, depending on the severity of the violation, limit or prohibit HT II's use of debentures, declare outstanding debentures immediately due and payable, and/or limit HT II from making new investments. Such actions by the SBA would, in turn, negatively affect us because HT II is our wholly owned subsidiary.

The SBA leverage limit may be increased by an additional \$75.0 million to a total of \$225.0 million with the approval of a second SBIC lender license and the additional investment of \$37.5 million of regulatory capital. We have submitted an application for a second license, although there is no assurance that such license will be granted. In addition, there is no assurance that we will be able to draw up to the maximum limit available under the SBIC program. In addition, in February 2010, Hercules completed its credit facility negotiations with Union Bank providing a one year credit facility of \$20.0 million. Pricing of the credit facility is LIBOR +2.25% with a floor of 4.0%, an advance rate of 50% against eligible loans, and secured by loans in the borrowing base.

At December 31, 2009 and December 31, 2008, we had the following borrowing capacity and outstandings:

(in thousands)	December 31, 2009		December 31, 2008	
	Facility Amount	Amount Outstanding	Facility Amount	Amount Outstanding
Wells Facility	\$ 50,000	\$	\$ 50,000	\$
SBA Debenture	150,000	130,600	137,100	127,200
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 200,000</b>	<b>\$ 130,600</b>	<b>\$ 187,100</b>	<b>\$ 127,200</b>

At our Annual Meeting of Stockholders on June 3, 2009, stockholders approved a proposal authorizing us to sell up to 20% of our common stock at a price below our net asset value per share, subject to Board approval of the offering. If we determine to conduct an offering to raise equity capital at a price below our net asset value, stockholders will experience immediate dilution following the offering. See Risk Factors. We intend to include a similar proposal in our proxy statement for 2010.

**Off Balance Sheet Arrangements**

In the normal course of business, we are party to financial instruments with off-balance sheet risk. These consist primarily of unfunded commitments to extend credit, in the form of loans, to our portfolio companies. Unfunded commitments to provide funds to portfolio companies are not reflected on our balance sheet. Our unfunded commitments may be significant from time to time. As of December 31, 2009, we had unfunded commitments of approximately \$11.7 million. These commitments will be subject to the same underwriting and ongoing portfolio maintenance as are the on-balance sheet financial instruments that we hold. Since these commitments may expire without being drawn upon, the total commitment amount does not necessarily represent future cash requirements. We intend to use cashflow from normal and early principal repayments, SBA debentures and our Wells Facility to fund these commitments. However, there can be no assurance that we will have sufficient capital available to fund these commitments as they come due.

**Table of Contents****Contractual Obligations**

The following table shows our contractual obligations as of December 31, 2009:

Contractual Obligations <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	Total	Payments due by period (in thousands)					Thereafter
		2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	
Borrowings <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ 130,600	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$ 130,600
Operating lease obligations <sup>(4)</sup>	3,657	991	967	991	708		
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 134,257</b>	<b>\$ 991</b>	<b>\$ 967</b>	<b>\$ 991</b>	<b>\$ 708</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>\$ 130,600</b>

(1) Excludes commitments to extend credit to our portfolio companies.

(2) We also have warrant participation with Citigroup. See Borrowings.

(3) Includes borrowings under the Credit Facility and the SBA debentures. There were no outstanding borrowings under the Wells Facility at December 31, 2009.

(4) Long-term facility leases.

**Borrowings**

Through Hercules Funding Trust I, an affiliated statutory trust, we had a securitized credit facility (the Credit Facility) with Citigroup Global Markets Realty Corp. and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc. On October 31, 2008, the Company's Credit Facility expired under the normal terms. All subsequent payments secured from the portfolio companies whose debt was included in the Credit Facility collateral pool were to be applied against interest and principal outstanding under the Credit Facility until April 30, 2009, when all outstanding interest and principal were due and payable. During the amortization period, borrowings under the Credit Facility bore interest at a rate per annum equal to LIBOR plus 6.50%. At December 31, 2008, \$89.6 million was outstanding under the Credit Facility. During the first quarter of 2009, we paid off all remaining principal and interest owed under the Credit Facility using approximately \$10.4 million from our regular principal and interest collection, approximately \$36.7 million of borrowings from the Wells Facility and approximately \$42.5 million from early payoffs.

Citigroup has an equity participation right through a warrant participation agreement on the pool of loans and warrants collateralized under the Credit Facility. Pursuant to the warrant participation agreement, we granted to Citigroup a 10% participation in all warrants held as collateral. However, no additional warrants are included in collateral subsequent to the facility amendment on May 2, 2007. As a result, Citigroup is entitled to 10% of the realized gains on the warrants until the realized gains paid to Citigroup pursuant to the agreement equals \$3,750,000 (the Maximum Participation Limit). The obligations under the warrant participation agreement continue even after the Credit Facility is terminated until the Maximum Participation Limit has been reached. During the year ended December 31, 2009, we recorded a reduction of the derivative liability related to this obligation and decreased its unrealized losses by approximately \$29,000 for Citigroup's participation in unrealized gains in the warrant portfolio. The value of their participation right on unrealized gains in the related equity investments was approximately \$468,000 at December 31, 2009 and is included in accrued liabilities. Based on the Company's average borrowings for the year ended December 31, 2009 and December 31, 2008, the amount of expense it recorded for its realized and unrealized gains for the related periods, the additional cost of borrowings as a result of the warrant participation agreement could increase by approximately 1.48% and 0.09%, respectively. There can be no assurances that the unrealized appreciation of the warrants will not be higher or lower in future periods due to fluctuations in the value of the warrants, thereby increasing or reducing the effect on the cost of borrowing. Since inception of the agreement, Citigroup has been paid approximately \$1.1 million under the warrant participation agreement thereby reducing our realized gains by this amount.

In January 2005, the Company formed HT II and HTM. HT II is licensed as a SBIC. HT II borrows funds from the SBA against eligible investments and additional deposits to regulatory capital. Under the Small Business Investment Act and current SBA policy applicable to SBICs, an SBIC can have outstanding at any time

---

**Table of Contents**

SBA guaranteed debentures up to twice the amount of its regulatory capital. The February 2009 enacted American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 ( Stimulus Bill ) contains provisions to increase the borrowing capacity of participants in the SBIC program. As of December 31, 2009, the maximum statutory limit on the dollar amount of outstanding SBA guaranteed debentures issued by a single SBIC is \$150.0 million, subject to periodic adjustments by the SBA. With \$68.55 million of regulatory capital as of December 31, 2009, HT II has the current capacity to issue up to a total of \$137.1 million of SBA guaranteed debentures, of which \$130.6 million was outstanding. Currently, HT II has paid commitment fees of approximately \$1.4 million. There is no assurance that HT II will be able to draw up to the maximum limit available under the SBIC program.

Included in the February Stimulus Bill is a provision, which allows for existing SBIC entities to obtain a second license and gain access to additional leverage of up to \$75 million, for a maximum of \$225.0 million combined SBIC leverage (subject to additional required capitalization of its second wholly owned SBIC subsidiary). Hercules has filed an application for a second SBIC license.

SBICs are designed to stimulate the flow of private equity capital to eligible small businesses. Under present SBA regulations, eligible small businesses include businesses that have a tangible net worth not exceeding \$18 million and have average annual fully taxed net income not exceeding \$6.0 million for the two most recent fiscal years. In addition, SBICs must devote 25.0% of its investment activity to smaller concerns as defined by the SBA. A smaller concern is one that has a tangible net worth not exceeding \$6.0 million and has average annual fully taxed net income not exceeding \$2.0 million for the two most recent fiscal years. SBA regulations also provide alternative size standard criteria to determine eligibility, which depend on the industry in which the business is engaged and are based on such factors as the number of employees and gross sales. According to SBA regulations, SBICs may make long-term loans to small businesses, invest in the equity securities of such businesses and provide them with consulting and advisory services. Through its wholly-owned subsidiary HT II, the Company plans to provide long-term loans to qualifying small businesses, and in connection therewith, make equity investments.

Through our wholly-owned subsidiary HT II, the Company plans to provide long-term loans to qualifying small businesses, and in connection therewith, make equity investments. HT II is periodically examined and audited by the SBA's staff to determine its compliance with SBIC regulations. As of December 31, 2009, HT II could draw up to \$137.1 million of leverage from the SBA as noted above. Borrowings under the program are charged interest based on ten year treasury rates plus a spread and the rates are generally set for a pool of debentures issued by the SBA in six month periods. The rates of borrowings under the various draws from the SBA beginning in April 2007 and set semiannually in March and September range from 4.233% to 5.725%. In addition, the SBA charges a fee that is set annually, depending on the Federal fiscal year the leverage commitment was delegated by the SBA, regardless of the date that the leverage was drawn by the SBIC. The annual fee on debenture pooling date on September 23, 2009 was 0.406%. The annual fees on other debentures have been set at 0.906%. The average amount of debentures outstanding for the year ended December 31, 2009 was approximately \$129.4 million and the average interest rate was approximately 6.27%. Interest payments are payable semi-annually and there are no principal payments required on these issues prior to maturity. Debentures under the SBA generally mature ten years after being borrowed. Based on the initial draw down date of April 2007, the initial maturity of our SBA debentures will occur in April 2017.

On August 25, 2008, the Company, through a special purpose wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company, Hercules Funding II, LLC, entered into a two-year revolving senior secured credit facility with an optional one-year extension with total commitments of \$50 million, with Wells Fargo Foothill as a lender and as an arranger and administrative agent. The Wells Facility has the capacity to increase to \$300 million if additional lenders are added to the syndicate. The Wells Facility expires on August 25, 2011, unless the option to extend the facility is exercised by the parties to the agreement. To date, we have not added any additional lenders under the Wells Facility but intend to seek to do so when the financial markets reopen.

Borrowings under the Wells Facility will generally bear interest at a rate per annum equal to Libor plus 3.25% or PRIME plus 2.0%, but not less than 5.0%. The average debt outstanding under the Wells Facility for the year



## **Table of Contents**

ended December 31, 2009 was approximately \$2.8 million and the average interest rate was approximately 5.4%. The Wells Facility requires the payment of a non-use fee of 0.5% annually, which was reduced to 0.3% upon the one year anniversary of the credit facility on August 25, 2009. The Wells Facility is collateralized by debt investments in our portfolio companies, and includes an advance rate equal to 50% of eligible loans placed in the collateral pool. The Wells Facility generally requires payment of interest on a monthly basis. All outstanding principal is due upon maturity, which includes the extension if exercised. We paid a one-time structuring fee of \$750,000 in connection with the Wells Facility which is being amortized over a 2 year period. There was no outstanding debt under the Wells Facility at December 31, 2009. In February 2010, the facility was extended an additional year until August 2011 and we paid a \$375,000 extension fee.

The Wells Facility requires various financial and operating covenants. These covenants require us to maintain certain financial ratios and a minimum tangible net worth of \$360 million. The Wells Facility was amended, effective April 30, 2009, to decrease the minimum tangible net worth covenant from \$360 million to \$250 million, contingent upon our total commitments under all lines of credit not exceeding \$250 million. To the extent our total commitments exceed \$250 million; the minimum tangible net worth covenant will increase on a pro rata basis commensurate with our net worth on a dollar for dollar basis. In addition, the tangible net worth covenant will increase by 90 cents on the dollar for every dollar of equity capital subsequently raised by us. The Wells Facility provides for customary events of default, including, but not limited to, payment defaults, breach of representations or covenants, bankruptcy events and change of control. We were in compliance with all covenants at December 31, 2009.

Debt financing costs are fees and other direct incremental costs incurred by us in obtaining debt financing and are recognized as prepaid expenses amortized into the consolidated statement of operations as loan fees over the term of the related debt instrument. As part of the Credit Facility, at December 31, 2008, we had prepaid debt financing costs of approximately \$466,000, no prepaid charges as of December 31, 2009 as the total debt has been paid off fully in the first quarter of 2009. The prepaid debt financing costs incurred by us in connection with the Wells Facility was approximately \$325,000 and \$814,000, net of accumulated amortization as of December 31, 2009 and 2008, respectively. In addition, as part of the SBA debenture, we had approximately \$3.6 million and \$3.9 million, net of accumulated amortization, of prepaid commitment and leverage fees as of December 31, 2009 and 2008, respectively.

In February of 2010, we closed on our new \$20.0 million credit facility with Union Bank, a one year revolving credit facility. Pricing of credit facility is LIBOR plus 2.25% with a floor of 4.0%, an advance rate of 50% against eligible loans, and secured by loans in the borrowing base.

We plan to aggregate pools of funded loans using the conduits that we may seek until a sufficiently large pool of funded loans is created which can then be securitized at a later date. We expect that any loans included in a securitization facility may be securitized on a non-recourse basis with respect to the credit losses on the loans. The current credit market dislocation has essentially eliminated access to this funding source and there can be no assurance that we will be able to complete this securitization strategy, or that it will be successful if or when the securitization market is reestablished. See Business Capital Structure.

**Table of Contents****Dividends**

The following table summarizes our dividends declared and paid on all shares, including restricted stock as of December 31, 2009:

<b>Date Declared</b>	<b>Record Date</b>	<b>Payment Date</b>	<b>Amount Per Share</b>
October 27, 2005	November 1, 2005	November 17, 2005	\$0.025
December 9, 2005	January 6, 2006	January 27, 2006	0.300
April 3, 2006	April 10, 2006	May 5, 2006	0.300
July 19, 2006	July 31, 2006	August 28, 2006	0.300
October 16, 2006	November 6, 2006	December 1, 2006	0.300
February 7, 2007	February 19, 2007	March 19, 2007	0.300
May 3, 2007	May 16, 2007	June 18, 2007	0.300
August 2, 2007	August 16, 2007	September 17, 2007	0.300
November 1, 2007	November 16, 2007	December 17, 2007	0.300
February 7, 2008	February 15, 2008	March 17, 2008	0.300
May 8, 2008	May 16, 2008	June 16, 2008	0.340
August 7, 2008	August 15, 2008	September 15, 2008	0.340
November 6, 2008	November 14, 2008	December 15, 2008	0.340
February 12, 2009	February 23, 2009	March 30, 2009	0.320*
May 7, 2009	May 15, 2009	June 15, 2009	0.300
August 6, 2009	August 14, 2009	September 14, 2009	0.300
October 15, 2009	October 20, 2009	November 23, 2009	0.300
December 16, 2009	December 24, 2009	December 30, 2009	0.040
			<b>\$5.005</b>

Of the dividends declared during the year ended December 31, 2009, 100% is distribution of ordinary income. Of the dividends declared during the year ended December 31, 2008, \$1.23 comprised ordinary income and \$0.09 comprised long term capital gains.

On February 12, 2009, the Board of Directors declared a dividend of \$0.32 per share to shareholders of record as of February 23, 2009 and payable on March 30, 2009. In accordance with Revenue Procedure 2009-15 providing temporary guidance regarding certain stock distribution for public traded RICs, our Board of Directors determined that approximately 90% of the dividend would be paid in newly issued shares of our common stock and no more than 10% will be paid in cash. The liquidity provided to us by paying 90% of the dividend in newly issued shares of common stock will assist us in preservation of capital, which we believe is prudent in the current economy.

Each year a statement on Form 1099-DIV identifying the source of the distribution (i.e., paid from ordinary income, paid from net capital gains on the sale of securities, and/or a return of paid-in-capital surplus which is a nontaxable distribution) is mailed to our stockholders. To the extent our taxable earnings fall below the total amount of our distributions for that fiscal year, a portion of those distributions may be deemed a tax return of capital to our stockholders.

We operate to qualify to be taxed as a RIC under the Code. Generally, a RIC is entitled to deduct dividends it pays to its shareholders from its income to determine taxable income. Taxable income includes our taxable interest, dividend and fee income, as well as taxable net capital gains. Taxable income generally differs from net income for financial reporting purposes due to temporary and permanent differences in the recognition of income and expenses, and generally excludes net unrealized appreciation or depreciation, as gains or losses are not included in taxable income until they are realized. In addition, gains realized for financial reporting purposes may differ from gains included in taxable income as a result of our election to recognize gains using installment sale treatment, which generally results in the deferment of gains for tax purposes until notes or other amounts,

**Table of Contents**

including amounts held in escrow, received as consideration from the sale of investments are collected in cash. Taxable income includes non-cash income, such as changes in accrued and reinvested interest and dividends, which includes contractual payment-in-kind interest, and the amortization of discounts and fees. Cash collections of income resulting from contractual PIK interest or the amortization of discounts and fees generally occur upon the repayment of the loans or debt securities that include such items. Non-cash taxable income is reduced by non-cash expenses, such as realized losses and depreciation and amortization expense.

Pursuant to a recent revenue procedure, the IRS has indicated that it will treat distributions from certain publicly traded RICs (including BDCs) that are paid part in cash and part in stock as dividends that would satisfy the RIC's annual distribution requirements and qualify for the dividends paid deduction for income tax purposes. In order to qualify for such treatment, the revenue procedure requires that at least 10% of the total distribution be paid in cash and that each shareholder have a right to elect to receive its entire distribution in cash. If the number of share-holders electing to receive cash would cause cash distributions to be in excess of 10%, then each shareholder electing to receive cash would receive a proportionate share of the cash to be distributed (although no shareholder electing to receive cash may receive less than 10% of such shareholder's distribution in cash). This revenue procedure applies to distributions made with respect to taxable years ending prior to January 1, 2012.

We have distributed and currently intend to distribute sufficient dividends to eliminate taxable income. Effective in 2009, our Board of Directors adopted a policy to distribute four quarterly distributions in an amount that approximates 90-95% of our taxable income. In addition, at the end of the year we may also pay an additional special dividend, such that we may distribute approximately 98% of our annual taxable income in the year it was earned, instead of spilling over our excess taxable income. We will continue to review our dividend policy on a periodic basis. We are subject to a nondeductible federal excise tax if we do not distribute at least 98% of our capital gains and net income for each one year period ending on October 31st. In December 2009 we paid a special fifth dividend of \$0.04 per share and, as such, at December 31, 2009, no excise tax was recorded because we distributed greater than 98% of capital gains and net income in 2009.

The table below shows the detail of our distributions for the years ended December 31, 2009 and 2008:

(in thousands)	2009	2008
Ordinary Income	\$ 43,914	\$ 40,780
Capital Gains		2,502
Return of Capital		
Tax Reported on tax form 1099-DIV	\$ 43,914	\$ 43,282

On February 11, 2010, the Board of Directors declared a cash dividend of \$0.20 per share to shareholders of record as of February 19, 2010 and payable on March 19, 2010.

**Critical Accounting Policies**

The preparation of consolidated financial statements in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles ( GAAP ) requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements, and revenues and expenses during the period reported. On an ongoing basis, our management evaluates its estimates and assumptions, which are based on historical experience and on various other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ from those estimates. Changes in our estimates and assumptions could materially impact our results of operations and financial condition.

**Valuation of Portfolio Investments.** The most significant estimate inherent in the preparation of our consolidated financial statements is the valuation of investments and the related amounts of unrealized appreciation and depreciation of investments recorded.

## **Table of Contents**

At December 31, 2009, approximately 73% of our total assets represented investments in portfolio companies that are valued at fair value by the Board of Directors. Value, as defined in Section 2(a) (41) of the 1940 Act, is (i) the market price for those securities for which a market quotation is readily available and (ii) for all other securities and assets, fair value is as determined in good faith by the Board of Directors in accordance with established valuation procedures and the recommendation of the Valuation Committee of the Board of Directors. Since there is typically no readily available market value for the investments in our portfolio, we value substantially all of our investments at fair value as determined in good faith by our board pursuant to a valuation policy and a consistent valuation process. Due to the inherent uncertainty in determining the fair value of investments that do not have a readily available market value, the fair value of our investments determined in good faith by our board may differ significantly from the value that would have been used had a ready market existed for such investments, and the differences could be material.

Consistent with ASC 820, the Company determines fair value to be the amount for which an investment could be exchanged in a current sale, which assumes an orderly disposition over a reasonable period of time between willing parties other than in a forced or liquidation sale. The Company's valuation policy considers the fact that no ready market exists for substantially all of the securities in which it invests.

There is no single standard for determining fair value in good faith. As a result, determining fair value requires that judgment be applied to the specific facts and circumstances of each portfolio investment. Unlike banks, we are not permitted to provide a general reserve for anticipated loan losses. Instead, we must determine the fair value of each individual investment on a quarterly basis. We will record unrealized depreciation on investments when we believe that an investment has decreased in value, including where collection of a loan or realization of an equity security is doubtful. Conversely, where appropriate, we will record unrealized appreciation if we believe that the underlying portfolio company has appreciated in value and, therefore, that our investment has also appreciated in value.

As a business development company, we invest primarily in illiquid securities including debt and equity-related securities of private companies. Our investments are generally subject to some restrictions on resale and generally have no established trading market. Because of the type of investments that we make and the nature of our business, our valuation process requires an analysis of various factors. Our valuation methodology includes the examination of, among other things, the underlying investment performance, financial condition and market changing events that impact valuation, estimated remaining life, and interest rate spreads of similar securities as of the measurement date. If there is a significant deterioration of the credit quality of a debt investment, we may consider other factors that a hypothetical market participant would use to estimate fair value, including the proceeds that would be received in a liquidation analysis.

With respect to private debt and equity securities, each investment is valued using industry valuation benchmarks, and, where appropriate, the value is assigned a discount reflecting the illiquid nature of the investment, and our minority, non-control position. When a qualifying external event such as a significant purchase transaction, public offering, or subsequent debt or equity sale occurs, the pricing indicated by the external event will be used to corroborate our private debt or equity valuation. We periodically review the valuation of our portfolio companies that have not been involved in a qualifying external event to determine if the enterprise value of the portfolio company may have increased or decreased since the last valuation measurement date. We may consider, but are not limited to, industry valuation methods such as price to enterprise value or price to equity ratios, discounted cash flow, valuation comparisons to comparable public companies or other industry benchmarks in our evaluation of the fair value of our investment. Securities that are traded in the over-the-counter market or on a stock exchange will be valued at the prevailing bid price on the valuation date.

Our Board of Directors has engaged an independent valuation firm to provide us with valuation assistance with respect to certain of our portfolio investments on a quarterly basis. We intend to continue to engage an independent valuation firm to provide us with assistance regarding our determination of the fair value of selected

---

**Table of Contents**

portfolio investments each quarter unless directed by the Board of Directors to cancel such valuation services. However, our Board of Directors is ultimately and solely responsible for determining the fair value of our investments in good faith.

***Income Recognition.*** Interest income is recorded on the accrual basis and is recognized as earned in accordance with the contractual terms of the loan agreement to the extent that such amounts are expected to be collected. Original Issue Discount, ( OID ), initially represents the value of detachable equity warrants obtained in conjunction with the acquisition of debt securities and is accreted into interest income over the term of the loan as a yield enhancement. When a loan becomes 90 days or more past due, or if management otherwise does not expect the portfolio company to be able to service its debt and other obligations, we will, as a general matter, place the loan on non-accrual status and cease recognizing interest income on that loan until all principal has been paid. However, we may make exceptions to this policy if the investment has sufficient collateral value and is in the process of collection. There were five and four loans on non-accrual status as of December 31, 2009 and 2008 with a fair value of approximately \$10.5 million and \$864,000, respectively. The cost of non-accrual loans are approximately \$25.5 million and \$2.9 million as of December 31, 2009 and 2008, respectively. The increase of the non-accrual loan value in 2009 is primarily driven by the investment in one consumer business portfolio company. There were no loans on non accrual status as of December 31, 2007.

***Paid-In-Kind and End of Term Income.*** Contractual paid-in-kind ( PIK ) interest, which represents contractually deferred interest added to the loan balance that is generally due at the end of the loan term, is generally recorded on the accrual basis to the extent such amounts are expected to be collected. We will generally cease accruing PIK interest if there is insufficient value to support the accrual or we do not expect the portfolio company to be able to pay all principal and interest due. In addition, we may also be entitled to an end-of-term payment that we amortize into income over the life of the loan. To maintain our status as a RIC, PIK and end-of-term income must be paid out to stockholders in the form of dividends even though we have not yet collected the cash. Amounts necessary to pay these dividends may come from available cash or the liquidation of certain investments. For the year ended December 31, 2009, 2008 and 2007, approximately \$2.9 million, \$1.0 million and \$381,000 in PIK income was recorded respectively.

***Fee Income.*** Fee income, generally collected in advance, includes loan commitment and facility fees for due diligence and structuring, as well as fees for transaction services and management services rendered by us to portfolio companies and other third parties. Loan and commitment fees are amortized into income over the contractual life of the loan. Management fees are generally recognized as income when the services are rendered. Loan origination fees are capitalized and then amortized into interest income using the effective interest rate method. In certain loan arrangements, warrants or other equity interests are received from the borrower as additional origination fees.

***Stock-Based Compensation.*** We have issued and may, from time to time, issue additional stock options and restricted stock to employees under our 2004 Equity Incentive Plan and Board members under our 2006 Equity Incentive Plan. We follow ASC 718, formally known as FAS 123 *Share-Based Payments* to account for stock options granted. Under ASC 718, compensation expense associated with stock-based compensation is measured at the grant date based on the fair value of the award and is recognized.

***Federal Income Taxes.*** We intend to operate so as to qualify to be taxed as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code and, as such, will not be subject to federal income tax on the portion of our taxable income and gains distributed to stockholders. To qualify as a RIC, we are required to distribute at least 90% of our investment company taxable income, as defined by the Code. We are subject to a non-deductible federal excise tax if we do not distribute at least 98% of our taxable income and 98% of our capital gain net income for each 1 year period ending on October 31. At December 31, 2009, no excise tax was recorded. At December 31, 2008, we recorded a liability for excise tax of approximately \$203,000 on income and capital gains of approximately \$5.0 million which was distributed in 2009.

## **Table of Contents**

Because federal income tax regulations differ from accounting principles generally accepted in the United States, distributions in accordance with tax regulations may differ from net investment income and realized gains recognized for financial reporting purposes. Differences may be permanent or temporary. Permanent differences are reclassified among capital accounts in the financial statement to reflect their tax character. Temporary differences arise when certain items of income, expense, gain or loss are recognized at some time in the future. Differences in classification may also result from the treatment of short-term gains as ordinary income for tax purposes.

### **Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

In June 2009, the Financial Accounting Standards Board, or FASB, issued Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 168 *The FASB Accounting Standards Codification and Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, or SFAS 168. SFAS 168 introduced a new Accounting Standard Codification, or ASC, which organized current and future accounting standards into a single codified system. SFAS 168, which is now referred to as ASC Topic 105 *Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, or ASC 105, under the new codification, superseded, but did not significantly change, all previously existing accounting standards. ASC 105 was effective for interim periods ending after September 15, 2009.

We adopted ASC 105 beginning with our quarter report on Form 10Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2009. In connection with adoption of this standard, The Company's discussion about specific accounting standards must now reference the standards as set forth in the new codification. The original reference as well as the new ASC reference has been included to assist readers of the financial statements.

In April 2009, the FASB issued FASB Staff Position No. FAS 107-1 and APB 28-1 *Interim Disclosures about Fair Value of Financial Instruments*, which was subsequently incorporated into ASC Topic 825 *Financial Instruments*. The April 2009 guidance requires disclosures about financial instruments, including fair value, carrying amount, and method and significant assumptions used to estimate the fair value. This standard was adopted as of June 30, 2009. The adoption of this standard did not have a significant impact on our consolidated financial statements.

In April 2009, the FASB issued FASB Staff Position No. FAS 115-2 and 124-2, *Recognition and Presentation of Other-Than-Temporary Impairment*, which was subsequently included in ASC 320-10-35. This guidance amends the existing guidance regarding impairments for investments in debt securities. Specifically, it changes how companies determine if an impairment is considered to be other-than-temporary and the related accounting. This standard also requires increased disclosures. The adoption of this standard did not have a significant impact on our consolidated financial statements.

In May 2009, the FASB issued SFAS 165 *Subsequent Events*, which was subsequently included in ASC Topic 855 *Subsequent Events*, or ASC 855. This guidance establishes general standards of accounting for and disclosure of events that occur after the balance sheet date but before financial statements are issued, and specifically requires the disclosure of the date through which an entity has evaluated subsequent events and the basis for that date. We adopted this guidance during the quarter ended June 30, 2009.

In February 2010, the FASB issued ASU 2010-09 to amend ASC 855 to address certain implementation issues, including (1) eliminating the requirement for SEC filers to disclose the date through which it has evaluated subsequent events, (2) clarifying the period through which conduit bond obligors must evaluate subsequent events, and (3) refining the scope of the disclosure requirements for reissued financial statements. The adoption of this standard did not have a significant impact on our consolidated financial statements.

In January 2010, the FASB issued ASU No. 2010-01, *Accounting for Distributions to Shareholders with Components of Stock and Cash* ( ASU 2010-01 ), which addresses the accounting for a distribution to

## **Table of Contents**

shareholders that offers them the ability to elect to receive their entire distribution in cash or shares of equivalent value with a potential limitation on the total amount of cash that shareholders can receive in the aggregate. ASU 2010-01 clarifies that the stock portion of such a distribution is considered a share issuance reflected prospectively in earnings per share. ASU 2010-01 is effective for interim and annual periods ending after December 15, 2009 and should be applied on a prospective basis. We adopted the requirements of ASU 2010-01 in the fourth quarter of 2009 and its adoption did not have a material effect on our consolidated financial statements.

In January 2010, the FASB issued ASU No. 2010-06, *Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures* ( ASU 2010-06 ), which amends ASC 820 and requires additional disclosure related to recurring and non-recurring fair value measurements with respect to transfers in and out of Levels 1 and 2 and activity in Level 3 fair value measurements. The update also clarifies existing disclosure requirements related to the level of disaggregation and disclosure about inputs and valuation techniques. ASU 2010-06 is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2009 except for disclosures related to activity in Level 3 fair value measurements which are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2010 and for interim periods within those fiscal years. Management is currently evaluating the impact on our consolidated financial statements of adopting ASU 2010-06.

## **Recent Developments**

### *Dividend Declaration*

On February 11, 2010, the Board of Directors announced a dividend of \$0.20 per share to shareholders of record as of February 19, 2010 and payable on March 19, 2010. This is the Company's eighteenth consecutive quarterly dividend declaration since its initial public offering, and will bring the total cumulative dividends declared to-date to \$5.21 per share.

### *Liquidity and Capital Resources*

In February of 2010, we closed on our new \$20.0 million credit facility with Union Bank, a one year revolving credit facility. Pricing of the credit facility is LIBOR plus 2.25% with a floor of 4.0%, an advance rate of 50% against eligible loans, and secured by loans in the borrowing base.

In February 2010, we extended the maturity date of the Wells Facility to August of 2011 from August 2010 under the same terms and conditions of the existing agreement. We have also commenced negotiations to expand the Wells Facility.

In February 2010, we responded to the Small Business Administration's comment letter relating to our second SBIC license for an additional \$75 million of borrowings. We anticipate that the license should be approved during the spring of 2010; however there can be no assurance that the SBA will grant Hercules a second license or when the license will be approved.

### *Share Repurchase Program*

In February 2010, our Board of Directors approved a \$35.0 million open market share repurchase program. This program replaces a \$15.0 million repurchase program which expired in November 2009. We may repurchase common stock in the open market, including block purchases, at prices that may be above or below the net asset value as reported in our then most recently published financial statements. We anticipate that the manner, timing, and amount of any share purchases will be determined by company management based upon the evaluation of market conditions, stock price, and additional factors in accordance with regulatory requirements. As a 1940 Act reporting company, we are required to notify shareholders of the existence of a repurchase

## **Table of Contents**

program when such a program is initiated or implemented. The repurchase program does not require Hercules to acquire any specific number of shares and may be extended, modified, or discontinued at any time.

### **Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk**

We are subject to financial market risks, including changes in interest rates. As of December 31, 2009, approximately 61.3% of our portfolio loans were at variable rates or at variable rates with a floor rate and 38.7% of our loans were at fixed rates. Over time additional investments may be at variable rates. We do not currently engage in any hedging activities. However, we may, in the future, hedge against interest rate fluctuations by using standard hedging instruments such as futures, options, and forward contracts. While hedging activities may insulate us against changes in interest rates, they may also limit our ability to participate in the benefits of lower interest rates with respect to our borrowed funds and higher interest rates with respect to our portfolio of investments. Interest rates on our borrowings are based primarily on LIBOR. Borrowings under our SBA program are fixed at the ten-year treasury every March and September for borrowings of the preceding six months. Borrowings under the program are charged interest based on ten year treasury rates plus a spread and the rates are generally set for a pool of debentures issued by the SBA in six month periods. The rates of borrowings under the various draws from the SBA beginning in April 2007 and set semiannually in March and September range from 4.233% to 5.725%. In addition, the SBA charges a fee that is set annually, depending on the Federal fiscal year the leverage commitment was delegated by the SBA, regardless of the date that the leverage was drawn by the SBIC. The annual fee on debenture pooling date on September 23, 2009 was 0.406%. The annual fees on other debentures have been set at 0.906%. Interest is payable semi-annually and there are no principal payments required on these issues prior to maturity. Debentures under the SBA generally mature ten years after being borrowed. Based on the initial draw down date of April 2007, the initial maturity of SBA debentures will occur in April 2017.

Interest payments on our SBA debentures are payable semi-annually and there are no principal payments required on these issues prior to maturity.

Borrowings under the Wells Facility will generally bear interest at a rate per annum equal to LIBOR plus 3.25% or PRIME plus 2.0%, but not less than 5.0%. The Wells Facility requires the payment of a non-use fee of 0.5% annually, which was reduced to 0.3% upon the one year anniversary of the credit facility on August 25, 2009. The Wells Facility is collateralized by debt investment in our portfolio companies, and includes an advance rate equal to 50% of eligible loans placed in the collateral pool. The Wells Facility generally requires payment of interest on a monthly basis. All outstanding principal is due upon maturity, which includes the extension if exercised. There were no borrowings outstanding under this facility at December 31, 2009. In February 2010 the facility was extended an additional year to August 2011 under the same terms and conditions.

In February of 2010, we closed on our \$20.0 million credit facility with Union Bank, a one year revolving credit facility. Pricing of credit facility is LIBOR plus 2.25% with a floor of 4.0%, an advance rate of 50% against eligible loans, and secured by loans in the borrowing base.



**Table of Contents**

**BUSINESS**

We are a specialty finance company that provides debt and equity growth capital to technology-related companies at various stages of development from seed and emerging growth to expansion and established stages of development, which include select publicly listed companies and lower middle market companies. We primarily finance privately-held companies backed by leading venture capital and private equity firms and also may finance certain select publicly-traded companies that lack access to public capital or are sensitive to equity ownership dilution. We source our investments through our principal office located in Silicon Valley, as well as our additional offices in Boston and Boulder.

Our goal is to be the leading structured debt financing provider of choice for venture capital and private equity-backed technology-related companies requiring sophisticated and customized financing solutions. Our strategy is to evaluate and invest in a broad range of companies active in the technology and life-science industries and to offer a full suite of growth capital products up and down the capital structure. We invest primarily in structured debt with warrants and, to a lesser extent, in senior debt and equity investments. We use the term "structured debt with warrants" to refer to any debt investment, such as a senior or subordinated secured loan, that is coupled with an equity component, including warrants, options or rights to purchase common or preferred stock. Our structured debt with warrants investments will typically be secured by select or all of the assets of the portfolio company.

We focus our investments in companies active in the technology industry sub-sectors characterized by products or services that require advanced technologies, including, but not limited to, computer software and hardware, networking systems, semiconductors, semiconductor capital equipment, information technology infrastructure or services, Internet consumer and business services, telecommunications, telecommunications equipment, renewable or alternative energy, media and life sciences. Within the life sciences sub-sector, we generally focus on medical devices, bio-pharmaceutical, drug discovery, drug delivery, health care services and information systems companies. We refer to all of these companies as "technology-related" companies and intend, under normal circumstances, to invest at least 80% of the value of our assets in such businesses.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio total return by generating current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our equity-related investments. Our primary business objectives are to increase our net income, net operating income and net asset value by investing in structured debt with warrants and equity of venture capital and private equity backed technology-related companies with attractive current yields and the potential for equity appreciation and realized gains. Our structured debt investments typically include warrants or other equity interests, giving us the potential to realize equity-like returns on a portion of our investments. Our equity ownership in our portfolio companies may represent a controlling interest. In some cases, we receive the right to make additional equity investments in our portfolio companies in connection with future equity financing rounds. Capital that we provide directly to venture capital and private equity backed technology-related companies is generally used for growth and general working capital purposes as well as in select cases for acquisitions or recapitalizations.

Our portfolio is comprised of, and we anticipate that our portfolio will continue to be comprised of, investments in technology-related companies at various stages of development. Consistent with regulatory requirements, we invest primarily in United States based companies and to a lesser extent in foreign companies. Since 2007, our investing emphasis has been primarily on private companies following or in connection with a subsequent institutional round of equity financing, which we refer to as expansion-stage companies and private companies in later rounds of financing and certain public companies, which we refer to as established-stage companies and lower middle market companies. We have also historically focused our investment activities in private companies following or in connection with the first institutional round of financing, which we refer to as emerging-growth companies.

## Table of Contents

### **Current Economic and Market Environment**

The U.S. capital and credit markets have been experiencing disruption and volatility since the summer of 2008 as evidenced by a lack of liquidity in the debt capital markets, significant write-offs in the financial services sector, the repricing of credit risk in the broadly syndicated credit market and the failure of many major financial institutions. These events have contributed to a continuing economic recession that is materially and adversely impacting the broader financial and credit markets and reducing the availability of credit and equity capital for the markets as a whole and financial services firms in particular, including us.

At the same time, the venture capital market for the technology-related companies in which we invest has been active, but is continuing to show signs of stress and reduced investment activity. Therefore, to the extent we have capital available; we believe this is an opportune time to invest on a limited basis in the structured lending market for technology-related companies. While today's economy creates potentially new attractive lending opportunities, our outlook remains cautious as the economic environment may cause additional portfolio stress. Due to the continuing economic slowdown and due to reduced venture capital investment activity, we determined that it would be prudent to substantially curtail new investment activity in 2009 in order to have working capital available to support our existing portfolio companies. These changes were made to manage our credit performance, maintain adequate liquidity and manage our operating expenses in this extremely challenging and unprecedented credit environment.

Like many other companies, we have continued to engage in activities to deleverage our balance sheet and strengthen cash resources available to us.

As discussed herein, on March 25, 2009, we paid off all outstanding borrowings under the Citigroup Global Markets Realty Corp. and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc. credit facility (the Credit Facility).

To minimize disruptions in our business as a result of current market conditions, we entered into an amendment with Wells Fargo Foothill, effective April 30, 2009, to decrease the minimum tangible net worth covenant from \$360 million to \$250 million, as discussed in the Wells Facility section of Borrowings. In February 2010, we extended the facility by one year to August 2011.

As of December 31, 2009, the maximum statutory limit on the dollar amount of outstanding debentures guaranteed by the U.S. Small Business Administration (SBA) issued to a single small business investment company (SBIC) is \$150.0 million. As of December 31, 2009, Hercules Technology II, L.P. (HT II), our wholly owned SBIC subsidiary, has regulatory capital of \$68.55 million and a commitment from the SBA to issue debentures up to \$137.1 million, of which approximately \$130.6 million was outstanding as of December 31, 2009. There is no assurance that HT II will be able to draw up to the maximum limit available under the SBIC program. In addition, we are eligible to be approved for a second license which would allow us to draw an aggregate of \$225.0 million with an additional investment of \$37.5 million of regulatory capital. We submitted our application to obtain a second lender license, and, in February 2010, we responded to the SBA's comment letter relating to our second lender license. We anticipate that the license should be approved during the spring of 2010; however there can be no assurance that the SBA will grant us a second lender license or when the license will be approved.

In addition, to strengthen our liquidity position and preserve cash, in March 2009, 90% of our first quarter 2009 dividend was paid with approximately 1.9 million newly issued shares of common stock and 10% or approximately \$1.1 million, was paid in cash.

In February 2010, we completed our credit facility negotiations with Union Bank providing a one year credit facility of \$20.0 million. Pricing of the credit facility is LIBOR plus 2.25% with a floor of 4.0%, an advance rate of 50% against eligible loans, and secured by loans in the borrowing base.

Despite the current capital market disruption and recession, we continue to see a steady pace of new investments by venture capitalists. As a result of this favorable level of venture capital investment activities, we



## **Table of Contents**

are experiencing an increase in new investment origination activities which commenced in the fourth quarter of 2009, and would expect it to continue to the extent the venture capital community continues to accelerate its own pace of new investments. To the extent that we are able, we intend to seek new investment opportunities; however, we remain cautious and conservative in our investment and credit management strategies and we do not expect to see significant growth in the portfolio until the second half of 2010.

### **Corporate History and Offices**

We are a Maryland Corporation formed in December 2003 that began investment operations in September 2004. We are an internally managed, non-diversified, closed-end investment company that has elected to be treated as a business development company under the Investment Company Act of 1940 Act. As a business development company, we are required to meet various regulatory tests. A business development company is required to invest at least 70% of its total assets in qualifying assets, including securities of private and thinly traded public U.S. companies, cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities and high-quality debt investments that mature in one year or less. A business development company also must meet a coverage ratio of total net assets to total senior securities, which include all of our borrowings (including accrued interest payable) except for debentures issued by the Small Business Administration, and any preferred stock we may issue in the future, of at least 200% subsequent to each borrowing or issuance of senior securities. See Regulation .

From incorporation through December 31, 2005, we were taxed as a corporation under Subchapter C of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 or as amended (the Code ). We have elected to be treated for federal income tax purposes as a regulated investment company, or RIC, under the Code. In order to continue to qualify as a RIC for federal income tax purposes, we must meet certain requirements, including certain minimum distribution requirements. See Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations.

Our principal executive offices are located at 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301 and our telephone number is (650) 289-3060. We also have additional offices in Boston, Boulder and Chicago. We maintain a website on the Internet at [www.herculestech.com](http://www.herculestech.com). Information contained in our website is not incorporated by reference into this Annual Report, and you should not consider that information as part of this Annual Report. Our annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q and our current reports on Form 8-K, as well as any amendments to those reports, are available free of charge through our website as soon as reasonably practicable after we file them with the Securities and Exchange Commission ( SEC ). These reports are also available on the SEC 's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

### **Our Market Opportunity**

We believe that technology-related companies compete in one of the largest and most rapidly growing sectors of the U.S. economy and that continued growth is supported by ongoing innovation and performance improvements in technology products as well as the adoption of technology across virtually all industries in response to competitive pressures. We believe that an attractive market opportunity exists for a specialty finance company focused primarily on investments in structured debt with warrants in technology-related companies for the following reasons:

Technology-related companies have generally been underserved by traditional lending sources;

Unfulfilled demand exists for structured debt financing to technology-related companies as the number of lenders has declined due to the recent financial market turmoil;

Structured debt with warrants products are less dilutive and complement equity financing from venture capital and private equity funds; and

## **Table of Contents**

Valuations currently assigned to technology-related companies in private financing rounds have generally decreased since 2008 as a result of the turmoil in the general market and should provide a good opportunity for attractive capital returns.

***Technology-Related Companies are Under served by Traditional Lenders.*** We believe many viable technology-related companies backed by financial sponsors have been unable to obtain sufficient growth financing from traditional lenders, including financial services companies such as commercial banks and finance companies, particularly due to the recent credit market dislocation and because traditional lenders have continued to consolidate and have adopted a more risk-averse approach to lending. More importantly, we believe traditional lenders are typically unable to underwrite the risk associated with financial sponsor-backed companies effectively.

The unique cash flow characteristics of many technology-related companies include significant research and development expenditures and high projected revenue growth thus often making such companies difficult to evaluate from a credit perspective. In addition, the balance sheets of emerging-growth and expansion-stage companies often include a disproportionately large amount of intellectual property assets, which can be difficult to value. Finally, the speed of innovation in technology and rapid shifts in consumer demand and market share add to the difficulty in evaluating technology-related companies.

Due to the difficulties described above, we believe traditional lenders are generally refraining from entering the structured mezzanine marketplace, instead preferring the risk-reward profile of asset based lending. Traditional lenders generally do not have flexible product offerings that meet the needs of technology-related companies. The financing products offered by traditional lenders typically impose on borrowers many restrictive covenants and conditions, including limiting cash outflows and requiring a significant depository relationship to facilitate rapid liquidation.

***Unfulfilled Demand for Structured Debt Financing to Technology-Related Companies.*** Private debt capital in the form of structured debt financing from specialty finance companies continues to be an important source of funding for technology-related companies. We believe that the level of demand for structured debt financing is a function of the level of annual venture equity investment activity. In 2009, venture capital-backed companies received, in approximately 2,400 transactions, equity financing in an aggregate amount of approximately \$20.5 billion, representing a 32% decrease from the preceding year, as reported by Dow Jones VentureSource. In addition, overall, the median round size in 2009 was \$5.0 million, down from \$7.0 million in 2008. These decreases were primarily a result of contraction of the capital markets experienced during the past year. Overall, seed- and first-round deals made up 18% of the deal flow in 2009, and later-stage deals made up roughly 56% of all capital invested.

We believe that demand for structured debt financing is currently under served, in part because of the credit market collapse in 2008 and the resulting exit of debt capital providers to technology-related companies during 2008 and 2009. In addition, lending requirements of traditional lenders have recently become more stringent due to the significant write-offs in the financial services sector, the re-pricing of credit risk in the broadly syndicated market, and the financial turmoil affecting the banking system and financial market, which have negatively impacted the debt and equity capital market in the United States and most other markets. At the same time, the venture capital market for the technology-related companies in which we invest has continued to be active. Therefore, to the extent we have capital available, we believe this is an opportune time to be active in the structured lending market for technology-related companies.

***Structured Debt with Warrants Products Complement Equity Financing From Venture Capital and Private Equity Funds.*** We believe that technology-related companies and their financial sponsors will continue to view structured debt securities as an attractive source of capital because it augments the capital provided by venture capital and private equity funds. We believe that our structured debt with warrants product provides access to growth capital that otherwise may only be available through incremental investments by existing equity

## **Table of Contents**

investors. As such, we provide portfolio companies and their financial sponsors with an opportunity to diversify their capital sources. Generally, we believe technology-related companies at all stages of development target a portion of their capital to be debt in an attempt to achieve a higher valuation through internal growth. In addition, because financial sponsor-backed companies have reached a more mature stage prior to reaching a liquidity event, we believe our investments could provide the debt capital needed to grow or recapitalize during the extended period prior to liquidity events.

### **Our Business Strategy**

Our strategy to achieve our investment objective includes the following key elements:

***Leverage the Experience and Industry Relationships of Our Management Team and Investment Professionals.*** We have assembled a team of experienced investment professionals with extensive experience as venture capitalists, commercial lenders, and originators of structured debt and equity investments in technology-related companies. Our investment professionals have, on average, more than 15 years of experience as equity investors in, and/or lenders to, technology-related companies. In addition, at Hercules, our team members have originated structured debt, debt with warrants and equity investments in over 130 technology-related companies, representing over \$1.6 billion in commitments, and have developed a network of industry contacts with investors and other participants within the venture capital and private equity communities. In addition, members of our management team also have operational, research and development and finance experience with technology-related companies. We have established contacts with leading venture capital and private equity fund sponsors, public and private companies, research institutions and other industry participants, which should enable us to identify and attract well-positioned prospective portfolio companies.

We concentrate our investing activities generally in industries in which our investment professionals have investment experience. We believe that our focus on financing technology-related companies will enable us to leverage our expertise in structuring prospective investments, to assess the value of both tangible and intangible assets, to evaluate the business prospects and operating characteristics of technology-related companies and to identify and originate potentially attractive investments with these types of companies.

***Mitigate Risk of Principal Loss and Build a Portfolio of Equity-Related Securities.*** We expect that our investments have the potential to produce attractive risk adjusted returns through current income, in the form of interest and fee income, as well as capital appreciation from equity-related securities. We believe that we can mitigate the risk of loss on our debt investments through the combination of loan principal amortization, cash interest payments, relatively short maturities, security interests in the assets of our portfolio companies, and on select investment covenants requiring prospective portfolio companies to have certain amounts of available cash at the time of our investment and the continued support from a venture capital or private equity firm at the time we make our investment.

Historically our structured debt investments to technology-related companies, typically include warrants or other equity interests, giving us the potential to realize equity-like returns on a portion of our investment. In addition, in some cases, we receive the right to make additional equity investments in our portfolio companies in connection with future equity financing rounds. We believe these equity interests will create the potential for meaningful long-term capital gains in connection with the future liquidity events of these technology-related companies.

***Provide Customized Financing Complementary to Financial Sponsors' Capital.*** We offer a broad range of investment structures and possess expertise and experience to effectively structure and price investments in technology-related companies. Unlike many of our competitors that only invest in companies that fit a specific set of investment parameters, we have the flexibility to structure our investments to suit the particular needs of our portfolio companies. We offer customized financing solutions ranging from senior debt to equity capital, with a focus on structured debt with warrants.

## **Table of Contents**

We use our relationships in the financial sponsor community to originate investment opportunities. Because venture capital and private equity funds typically invest solely in the equity securities of their portfolio companies, we believe that our debt investments will be viewed as an attractive and complimentary source of capital, both by the portfolio company and by the portfolio company's financial sponsor. In addition, we believe that many venture capital and private equity fund sponsors encourage their portfolio companies to use debt financing for a portion of their capital needs as a means of potentially enhancing equity returns, minimizing equity dilution and increasing valuations prior to a subsequent equity financing round or a liquidity event.

***Invest at Various Stages of Development.*** We provide growth capital to technology-related companies at all stages of development, from emerging-growth companies, to expansion-stage companies and established-stage companies. We believe that this provides us with a broader range of potential investment opportunities than those available to many of our competitors, who generally focus their investments on a particular stage in a company's development. Because of the flexible structure of our investments and the extensive experience of our investment professionals, we believe we are well positioned to take advantage of these investment opportunities at all stages of prospective portfolio companies' development.

***Benefit from Our Efficient Organizational Structure.*** We believe that the perpetual nature of our corporate structure enables us to be a long-term partner for our portfolio companies in contrast to traditional mezzanine and investment funds, which typically have a limited life. In addition, because of our access to the equity markets, we believe that we may benefit from a lower cost of capital than that available to private investment funds. We are not subject to requirements to return invested capital to investors nor do we have a finite investment horizon. Capital providers that are subject to such limitations are often required to seek a liquidity event more quickly than they otherwise might, which can result in a lower overall return on an investment.

***Deal Sourcing Through Our Proprietary Database.*** We have developed a proprietary and comprehensive structured query language-based (SQL) database system to track various aspects of our investment process including sourcing, originations, transaction monitoring and post-investment performance. As of December 31, 2009, our proprietary SQL-based database system included over 20,000 technology-related companies and approximately 4,800 venture capital, private equity sponsors/investors, as well as various other industry contacts. This proprietary SQL system allows us to maintain, cultivate and grow our industry relationships while providing us with comprehensive details on companies in the technology-related industries and their financial sponsors.

### **Our Investments and Operations**

We principally invest in debt securities and, to a lesser extent, equity securities, with a particular emphasis on structured debt with warrants.

We generally seek to invest in companies that have been operating for at least six to 12 months prior to the date of our investment. We anticipate that such entities may, at the time of investment, be generating revenues or will have a business plan that anticipates generation of revenues within 24 to 48 months. Further, we anticipate that on the date of our investment we will generally obtain a lien on available assets, which may or may not include intellectual property, and these companies will have sufficient cash on their balance sheet to operate as well as potentially amortize their debt for at least three to nine months following our investment. We generally require that a prospective portfolio company, in addition to having sufficient capital to support leverage, demonstrate an operating plan capable of generating cash flows or raising the additional capital necessary to cover its operating expenses and service its debt, for an additional six to twelve months subject to market conditions.

We expect that our investments will generally range from \$1.0 million to \$25.0 million. We typically structure our debt securities to provide for amortization of principal over the life of the loan, but may include an interest-only period of 3 to 18 months for emerging growth and expansion-stage companies and longer for established-stage companies. Our loans will be collateralized by a security interest in the borrower's assets,

---

**Table of Contents**

although we may not have the first claim on these assets and the assets may not include intellectual property. Our debt investments carry fixed or variable contractual interest rates which generally ranged from Prime to 17% as of December 31, 2009. As of December 31, 2009, 61.3% of our loans were at variable rates or variable rates with a floor and 38.7% of the loans were at fixed rates. In addition to the cash yields received on our loans, in some instances, certain loans may also include any of the following: end of term payments, exit fees, balloon payment fees, success fees, payment-in-kind ( PIK ) provisions or prepayment fees, which we may be required to include in income prior to receipt. We also generate revenue in the form of commitment and facility fees.

In addition, the majority of our venture capital-backed companies structured debt investments generally have equity enhancement features, typically in the form of warrants or other equity-related securities designed to provide us with an opportunity for potential capital appreciation. The warrants typically will be immediately exercisable upon issuance and generally will remain exercisable for the lesser of five to seven years or one to three years after completion of an initial public offering. The exercise prices for the warrants varies from nominal exercise prices to exercise prices that are at or above the current fair market value of the equity for which we receive warrants. We may structure warrants to provide minority rights provisions or on a very select basis put rights upon the occurrence of certain events. We generally target a total annualized return (including interest, fees and value of warrants) of 12% to 25% for our debt investments.

Typically, our structured debt and equity investments take one of the following forms:

*Structured debt with warrants.* We seek to invest a majority of our assets in structured debt with warrants of prospective portfolio companies. Traditional mezzanine debt is a layer of high-coupon financing between debt and equity that most commonly takes the form of subordinated debt coupled with warrants, combining the cash flow and risk characteristics of both senior debt and equity. However, our investments in structured debt with warrants may be the only debt capital on the balance sheet of our portfolio companies, and in many cases we have a first priority security interest in all of our portfolio company's assets, or in certain investments we may have a negative pledge on intellectual property. Our structured debt with warrants typically have maturities of between two and seven years, with full amortization after an interest only period for emerging-growth or expansion-stage companies and longer deferred amortization for select established-stage companies. Our structured debt with warrants generally carry a contractual interest rate between Prime and 17% and may include an additional end-of-term payment or PIK ( Paid in Kind ), and are in an amount between \$1.0 million and \$25.0 million. In most cases we collateralize our investments by obtaining security interests in our portfolio companies' assets, which may include their intellectual property. In other cases we may prohibit a company from pledging or otherwise encumbering their intellectual property. We may structure our structured debt with warrants with restrictive affirmative and negative covenants, default penalties, prepayment penalties, lien protection, equity calls, change-in-control provisions or board observation rights.

*Senior Debt.* We seek to invest a limited portion of our assets in senior debt. Senior debt may be collateralized by accounts receivable and/or inventory financing of prospective portfolio companies. Senior debt has a senior position with respect to a borrower's scheduled interest and principal payments and holds a first priority security interest in the assets pledged as collateral. Senior debt also may impose covenants on a borrower with regard to cash flows and changes in capital structure, among other items. We generally collateralize our investments by obtaining security interests in our portfolio companies' assets, which may include their intellectual property. In other cases we may obtain a negative pledge covering a company's intellectual property. Our senior loans, in certain instances, may be tied to the financing of specific assets. In connection with a senior debt investment, we may also provide the borrower with a working capital line-of-credit that will carry an interest rate ranging from Prime or LIBOR plus a spread with a floor, generally maturing in one to three years, and will be secured by accounts receivable and/or inventory.

*Equipment Loans.* We intend to invest a limited portion of our assets in equipment-based loans to early-stage prospective portfolio companies. Equipment-based loans are secured by a first priority security interest in only the specific assets financed. These loans are generally for amounts up to \$3.0



**Table of Contents**

million, carry a contractual interest rate between Prime and Prime plus 10%, and have an average term between three and four years. Equipment loans may also include end of term payments.

*Equity-Related Securities.* The equity-related securities we hold consist primarily of warrants or other equity interests generally obtained in connection with our structured debt investments. In addition to the warrants received as a part of a structured debt financing, we typically receive the right to make equity investments in a portfolio company in connection with that company's next round of equity financing. We may also on certain debt investments have the right to convert a portion of the debt investment into equity. These rights will provide us with the opportunity to further enhance our returns over time through opportunistic equity investments in our portfolio companies. These equity-related investments are typically in the form of preferred or common equity and may be structured with a dividend yield, providing us with a current return, and with customary anti-dilution protection and preemptive rights. In the future, we may achieve liquidity through a merger or acquisition of a portfolio company, a public offering of a portfolio company's stock or by exercising our right, if any, to require a portfolio company to buy back the equity-related securities we hold. We may also make stand alone direct equity investments into portfolio companies in which we may not have any debt investment in the company. As of December 31, 2009, we held equity interests in 39 portfolio companies.

A comparison of the typical features of our various investment alternatives is set forth in the chart below.

	<b>Senior Debt</b>	<b>Structured debt with warrants</b>	<b>Equipment Loans</b>	<b>Equity Securities</b>
<b>Typical Structure</b>	Term or revolving debt	Term debt with warrants	Term debt with warrants	Preferred stock or common stock
<b>Investment Horizon</b>	Usually under 3 years	Long term, ranging from 2 to 7 years, with an average of 3 years	Ranging from 3 to 4 years	Ranging from 3 to 7 years
<b>Ranking/Security</b>	Senior/First lien	Senior secured, either first out or last out second lien	Secured only by underlying equipment	None/unsecured
<b>Covenants</b>	Generally borrowing base and financial	Less restrictive; Mostly financial; Maintenance-based	None	None
<b>Risk Tolerance</b>	Low	Medium/High	High	High
<b>Coupon/Dividend</b>	Cash pay floating or fixed rate	Cash pay fixed and floating rate; Payment-in-kind in limited cases	Cash pay-floating or fixed rate and may include Payment-in-kind	Generally none
<b>Customization or Flexibility</b>	Little to none	More flexible	Little to none	Flexible

<b>Equity Dilution</b>	None to low	Low to medium	Low	High
------------------------	-------------	---------------	-----	------

**Investment Criteria**

We have identified several criteria, among others, that we believe are important in achieving our investment objective with respect to prospective portfolio companies. These criteria, while not inclusive, provide general guidelines for our investment decisions.

## **Table of Contents**

**Portfolio Composition.** While we generally focus our investments in venture capital and private equity-backed technology-related companies, we seek to diversify across various financial sponsors as well as across various stages of companies' development and various technology industry sub-sectors and geographies. During 2009, we began increasing our investments in lower middle market companies that may be or are approaching an operational level where they are EBITDA positive and possibly cash flow positive thereby decreasing their reliance on additional venture capital or private equity investments.

**Continuing Support from One or More Financial Sponsors.** We generally invest in companies in which one or more established financial sponsors have previously invested and continue to make a contribution to the management of the business. We believe that having established financial sponsors with meaningful commitments to the business is a key characteristic of a prospective portfolio company. In addition, we look for representatives of one or more financial sponsors to maintain seats on the Board of Directors of a prospective portfolio company as an indication of such commitment.

**Company Stage of Development.** While we invest in companies at various stages of development, we generally require that prospective portfolio companies be beyond the seed stage of development and generally have received or anticipate to have commitments for their first institutional round of equity financing for early stage companies. Starting in 2008, we began shifting our focus to expansion and established-stage companies that have revenues or significant anticipated revenue growth. We expect a prospective portfolio company to demonstrate progress in its product development or demonstrate a path towards revenue generation or increase its revenues and operating cash flow over time. The anticipated growth rate of a prospective portfolio company is a key factor in determining the value that we ascribe to any warrants or other equity securities that we may acquire in connection with an investment in debt securities.

**Operating Plan.** We generally require that a prospective portfolio company, in addition to having potential access to capital to support leverage, demonstrate an operating plan capable of generating cash flows or the ability to potentially raise the additional capital necessary to cover its operating expenses and service its debt for a specific period. Specifically, we require that a prospective portfolio company demonstrate at the time of our proposed investment that it has cash on its balance sheet, or is in the process of completing a financing so that it will have cash on its balance sheet, sufficient to support its operations for a minimum of three to nine months.

**Security Interest.** In many instances we seek a first priority security interest in all of the portfolio company's tangible and intangible assets as collateral for our debt investment, subject in some cases to permitted exceptions. In other cases we may obtain a negative pledge prohibiting a company from pledging or otherwise encumbering their intellectual property. Although we do not intend to operate as an asset-based lender, the estimated liquidation value of the assets, if any, collateralizing the debt securities that we hold is an important factor in our credit analysis and subject to assumptions that may change over the life of the investment especially when attempting to estimate the value of intellectual property. We generally evaluate both tangible assets, such as accounts receivable, inventory and equipment, and intangible assets, such as intellectual property, customer lists, networks and databases.

**Covenants.** Our investments may include one or more of the following covenants; cross-default, or material adverse change provisions, require the portfolio company to provide periodic financial reports and operating metrics and will typically limit the portfolio company's ability to incur additional debt, sell assets, dividend recapture, engage in transactions with affiliates and consummate an extraordinary transaction, such as a merger or recapitalization without our consent. In addition, we may require other performance or financial based covenants, as we deem appropriate.

**Exit Strategy.** Prior to making a debt investment that is accompanied by an equity-related security in a prospective portfolio company, we analyze the potential for that company to increase the liquidity of its equity through a future event that would enable us to realize appreciation in the value of our equity interest. Liquidity events may include an initial public offering, a private sale of our equity interest to a third party, a merger or an acquisition of the company or a purchase of our equity position by the company or one of its stockholders.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Investment Process**

We have organized our management team around the four key elements of our investment process:

Origination;

Underwriting;

Documentation; and

Loan and Compliance Administration.

Our investment process is summarized in the following chart:

#### ***Origination***

The origination process for our investments includes sourcing, screening, preliminary due diligence and deal structuring and negotiation, all leading to an executed non-binding term sheet. Our investment origination team, which consists of approximately 27 investment professionals, is headed by our Senior Managing Directors of Technology and Life Science, and our Chief Executive Officer. The origination team is responsible for sourcing potential investment opportunities and members of the investment origination team use their extensive relationships with various leading financial sponsors, management contacts within technology-related companies, trade sources, technology conferences and various publications to source prospective portfolio companies. Our investment origination team is divided into middle market, technology and life sciences sub-teams to better source potential portfolio companies.

In addition, we have developed a proprietary and comprehensive SQL-based database system to track various aspects of our investment process including sourcing, originations, transaction monitoring and post-investment performance. As of December 31, 2009, our proprietary SQL-based database system included over 20,000 technology-related companies and approximately 4,800 venture capital private equity sponsors/investors, as well as various other industry contacts. This proprietary SQL system allows our origination team to maintain, cultivate and grow our industry relationships while providing our origination team with comprehensive details on companies in the technology-related industries and their financial sponsors.

## **Table of Contents**

If a prospective portfolio company generally meets certain underwriting criteria, we perform preliminary due diligence, which may include high level company and technology assessments, evaluation of its financial sponsors' support, market analysis, competitive analysis, identify key management, risk analysis and transaction size, pricing, return analysis and structure analysis. If the preliminary due diligence is satisfactory, and the origination team recommends moving forward, we then structure, negotiate and execute a non-binding term sheet with the potential portfolio company. Upon execution of a term sheet, the investment opportunity moves to the underwriting process to complete formal due diligence review and approval.

### ***Underwriting***

The underwriting review includes formal due diligence and approval of the proposed investment in the portfolio company.

*Due Diligence.* Our due diligence on a prospective investment is typically completed by two or more investment professionals whom we define as the underwriting team. The underwriting team for a proposed investment consists of the deal sponsor who typically possesses general industry knowledge and is responsible for originating and managing the transaction, other investment professional(s) who perform due diligence, credit and corporate financial analyses and, as needed, our Chief Legal Officer and other legal professionals. To ensure consistent underwriting, we generally use our standardized due diligence methodologies, which include due diligence on financial performance and credit risk as well as an analysis of the operations and the legal and applicable regulatory framework of a prospective portfolio company. The members of the underwriting team work together to conduct due diligence and understand the relationships among the prospective portfolio company's business plan, operations and financial performance.

As part of our evaluation of a proposed investment, the underwriting team prepares an investment memorandum for presentation to the investment committee. In preparing the investment memorandum, the underwriting team typically interviews with select key management of the company and select financial sponsors and assembles information necessary to the investment decision. If and when appropriate, the investment professionals may also contact industry experts and customers, vendors or, in some cases, competitors of the company.

*Approval Process.* The sponsoring managing director or principal presents the investment memorandum to our investment committee for consideration. The unanimous approval of our investment committee is required before we proceed with any investment. The members of our investment committee are our Chief Executive Officer, our Chief Legal Officer, our Chief Financial Officer and the Senior Managing Directors of Technology and Life Science. The investment committee generally meets weekly and more frequently on an as-needed basis. The Senior Managing Directors abstain from voting with respect to investments they originate.

### ***Documentation***

Our documentation group, headed by our Chief Legal Officer, administers the front-end documentation process for our investments. This group is responsible for documenting the term sheet approved by the investment committee to memorialize the transaction with a prospective portfolio company. This group negotiates loan documentation and, subject to the approval of the Chief Legal Officer and/or the Associate General Counsel, final documents are prepared for execution by all parties. The documentation group generally uses the services of external law firms to complete the necessary documentation.

### ***Loan and Compliance Administration***

Our loan and compliance administration group, headed by our Chief Financial Officer and Senior Credit Officer, administers loans and tracks covenant compliance, if applicable, of our investments and oversees periodic reviews of our critical functions to ensure adherence with our internal policies and procedures. After

**Table of Contents**

funding of a loan in accordance with the investment committee's approval, the loan is recorded in our loan administration software and our SQL-based database system. The loan and compliance administration group is also responsible for ensuring timely interest and principal payments and collateral management as well as advising the investment committee on the financial performance and trends of each portfolio company, including any covenant violations that occur, to aid us in assessing the appropriate course of action for each portfolio company and evaluating overall portfolio quality. In addition, the loan and compliance administration group advises the investment committee and the Valuation Committee of the board, accordingly, regarding the credit and investment grading for each portfolio company as well as changes in the value of collateral that may occur.

The loan and compliance administration group monitors our portfolio companies in order to determine whether the companies are meeting our financing criteria and their respective business plans and also monitors the financial trends of each portfolio company from its monthly or quarterly financial statements to assess the appropriate course of action for each company and to evaluate overall portfolio quality. In addition, our management team closely monitors the status and performance of each individual company through our SQL-based database system and periodic contact with our portfolio companies' management teams and their respective financial sponsors.

*Credit and Investment Grading System.* Our loan and compliance administration group uses an investment grading system to characterize and monitor our outstanding loans. Our loan and compliance administration group monitors and, when appropriate, recommends changes to investment grading. Our investment committee reviews the recommendations and/or changes to the investment grading, which are submitted on a quarterly basis to the Valuation Committee and our Board of Directors for approval.

From time to time, we will identify investments that require closer monitoring or become workout assets. We develop a workout strategy for workout assets and our investment committee monitors the progress against the strategy. We will incur losses from our investing activities, however, we work with our troubled portfolio companies in order to recover as much of our investments as is practicable, including possibly taking control of the portfolio company. There can be no assurance that principal will be recovered.

We use the following investment grading system approved by our Board of Directors:

- Grade 1. Loans involve the least amount of risk in our portfolio. The borrower is performing above expectations, and the trends and risk profile is generally favorable.
- Grade 2. The borrower is performing as expected and the risk profile is neutral to favorable. All new loans are initially graded 2.
- Grade 3. The borrower may be performing below expectations, and the loan's risk has increased materially since origination. We increase procedures to monitor a borrower that may have limited amounts of cash remaining on the balance sheet, is approaching its next equity capital raise within the next three to six months, or if the estimated fair value of the enterprise may be lower than when the loan was originated. We will generally lower the loan grade to a level 3 even if the company is performing in accordance to plan as it approaches the need to raise additional cash to fund its operations. Once the borrower closes its new equity capital raise, we may increase the loan grade back to grade 2.
- Grade 4. The borrower is performing materially below expectations, and the loan risk has substantially increased since origination. Loans graded 4 may experience some partial loss or full return of principal but are expected to realize some loss of interest which is not anticipated to be repaid in full, which, to the extent not already reflected, may require the fair value of the loan to be reduced to the amount we anticipate will be recovered. Grade 4 investments are closely monitored.
- Grade 5. The borrower is in workout, materially performing below expectations and a significant risk of principal loss is probable. Loans graded 5 will experience some partial principal loss or full loss of remaining principal outstanding is expected. Grade 5 loans will require the fair value of the loans be reduced to the amount, if any, we anticipate will be recovered.

## **Table of Contents**

At December 31, 2009, our investments had a weighted average investment grading of 2.71.

### ***Managerial Assistance***

As a business development company, we are required to offer, and provide upon request, managerial assistance to our portfolio companies. This assistance could involve, among other things, monitoring the operations of our portfolio companies, participating in board and management meetings, consulting with and advising officers of portfolio companies and providing other organizational and financial guidance. We may receive fees for these services.

### **Competition**

Our primary competitors provide financing to prospective portfolio companies and include non-bank financial institutions, federally or state chartered banks, venture debt funds, financial institutions, venture capital funds, private equity funds, investment funds and investment banks. Many of these entities have greater financial and managerial resources than we have, and the 1940 Act imposes certain regulatory restrictions on us as a business development company to which many of our competitors are not subject. However, we believe that few of our competitors possess the expertise to properly structure and price debt investments to venture capital and private equity backed technology-related companies. We believe that our specialization in financing technology-related companies will enable us to determine a range of potential values of intellectual property assets, evaluate the business prospects and operating characteristics of prospective portfolio companies and, as a result, identify investment opportunities that produce attractive risk-adjusted returns. For additional information concerning the competitive risks we face, see Risk Factors Risks Related to our Business and Structure We operate in a highly competitive market for investment opportunities, and we may not be able to compete effectively.

### **Corporate Structure**

We are a Maryland corporation and an internally-managed, non-diversified, closed-end investment company that has elected to be regulated as a business development company under the 1940 Act. Hercules Technology II, L.P. ( HT II ), our wholly-owned subsidiary, is licensed under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958 as a Small Business Investment Company ( SBIC ). Hercules Technology SBIC Management, LLC ( HTM ), another wholly-owned subsidiary, functions as the general partner of our subsidiary HT II. Hercules Funding I LLC, our wholly owned subsidiary, and Hercules Funding Trust I function are vehicles we used to collateralize loans under our Credit Facility and are currently inactive. We also use wholly owned subsidiaries, all of which are structured as Delaware corporations and limited liability companies, to permit us to hold portfolio companies organized as limited liability companies, or LLCs, (or other forms of pass-through entities) and still satisfy the RIC tax requirement that at least 90% of our gross income for income tax purposes is investment income. Our wholly owned subsidiary, Hercules Funding II, LLC, functions as a vehicle to collateralize loans under our securitized facility with Wells Fargo Foothill, Inc.

Our principal executive offices are located at 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301. We also have offices in: Boston, Massachusetts; Boulder, Colorado and Chicago, Illinois.

### **Employees**

As of December 31, 2009, we had 45 employees, including 27 investment and portfolio management professionals all of whom have extensive experience working on financing transactions for technology-related companies.

**Table of Contents****PORTFOLIO COMPANIES**

The following tables set forth certain information as of December 31, 2009 regarding each portfolio company in which we had a debt or equity investment. The general terms of our loans and other investments are described in Business Our Investments. We offer to make available significant managerial assistance to our portfolio companies. In addition, we may receive rights to observe the Board of Directors meetings of our portfolio companies.

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Acceleron Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 149 Sidney Street Cambridge, MA 02139	Drug Discovery	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.54%		69	1,157
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.14%		35	215
		Preferred Stock	0.88%		1,243	2,508
Total Acceleron Pharmaceuticals, Inc.					1,347	3,880
Aveo Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 75 Sidney Street 4 <sup>th</sup> Floor Cambridge, MA 02139	Drug Discovery	Senior Debt				
		Matures May 2012				
		Interest rate 11.13%		\$14,564	14,508	14,509
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.47%		190	725
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.11%		104	219
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.04%		24	76
Total Aveo Pharmaceuticals, Inc.					14,826	15,529
Dicerna Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 480 Arsenal Street Bldg 1, Suite 120, Watertown, MA 02472	Drug Discovery	Senior Debt				
		Matures April 2012				
		Interest rate Prime + 9.20% or Floor rate of 12.95%		\$6,603	6,434	6,434
		Preferred Stock Warrants	1.47%		206	128
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.25%		31	22
Total Dicerna Pharmaceuticals, Inc.					6,671	6,584
Elixir Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 300 Putnam Ave Cambridge, MA 02139	Drug Discovery	Senior Debt				
		Matures October 2011				
		Interest rate Prime + 9.25% or Floor rate of 12.5%		\$8,067	8,067	8,067
		Preferred Stock Warrants	1.08%		217	
Total Elixir Pharmaceuticals, Inc.					8,284	8,067
EpiCept Corporation 777 Old Saw Mill River Road Tarrytown, NY 10591	Drug Discovery	Common Stock Warrants	0.42%		8	38
		Common Stock Warrants	2.21%		40	201
Total EpiCept Corporation					48	239
Horizon Therapeutics, Inc. 1033 Skokie Boulevard, Suite 355 Northbrook, IL 60062	Drug Discovery	Senior Debt				
		Matures July 2011				
		Interest rate Prime + 1.50%		\$4,699	4,638	4,638
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.31%		231	
Total Horizon Therapeutics, Inc.					4,869	4,638
Inotek Pharmaceuticals Corp. 33 Hayden Avenue, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Floor Lexington, MA 02421	Drug Discovery	Preferred Stock	1.08%		1,500	353





**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Merrimack Pharmaceuticals, Inc. One Kendall Square, Building 700, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Flr Cambridge, MA 02139	Drug Discovery	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.34%		155	269
		Preferred Stock	0.61%		2,000	1,699
<b>Total Merrimack Pharmaceuticals, Inc.</b>					<b>2,155</b>	<b>1,968</b>
Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 75 Kneeland Street Boston, MA 02111	Drug Discovery	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.52%		137	55
		Preferred Stock	0.61%		1,000	1,000
<b>Total Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc.</b>					<b>1,137</b>	<b>1,055</b>
Portola Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 270 E Grand Ave South San Francisco CA 94080	Drug Discovery	Senior Debt Matures April 2011 Interest rate Prime + 2.16%		\$6,666	6,667	6,671
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.35%		152	288
<b>Total Portola Pharmaceuticals, Inc.</b>					<b>6,819</b>	<b>6,959</b>
Recoly, N.V. <sup>(5)</sup> c/o Tarma Trust Management N.V., Pietermaai 15, Curaçao, Netherlands Total Recoly, N.V.	Drug Discovery	Senior Debt Matures June 2012  Interest rate Prime + 4.25%		\$2,576	2,576	2,576
<b>Total Drug Discovery (14.15%)</b>					<b>50,232</b>	<b>51,848</b>
Affinity Videonet, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 1641 California, 3rd Floor Denver, CO 80202	Communications & Networking	Senior Debt Matures June 2012 Interest rate Prime + 8.75% or Floor rate of 12.00%		\$ 2,318	2,326	2,326
		Senior Debt Matures June 2012 Interest rate Prime + 14.75% or Floor rate of 18.00%		\$ 2,000	2,052	2,052
		Revolving Line of Credit Matures June 2012 Interest rate Prime + 9.75% or Floor rate of 13.00%		\$ 500	500	500
		Preferred Stock Warrants	4.45%		102	83
<b>Total Affinity Videonet, Inc.</b>					<b>4,980</b>	<b>4,961</b>
E-band Communications, Inc. <sup>(6)</sup> 10095 Scripps Ranch Ct. Suite A. San Diego, CA 92131	Communications & Networking	Preferred Stock	11.00%		2,880	2,274
<b>Total E-Band Communications, Inc.</b>					<b>2,880</b>	<b>2,274</b>

Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

IKANO Communications, Inc. 124 N. Charles Lindbergh Salt Lake City, UT 84111	Communications & Networking	Senior Debt Matures August 2011 Interest rate 12.00% Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock Warrants	\$ 6,472	6,472	6,472
			1.37%	45	
			2.08%	72	
Total IKANO Communications, Inc.				6,589	6,472
Neonova Holding Company	Communications & Networking	Preferred Stock Warrants	1.37%	94	42
1000 Perimeter Park Drive,					
Suite K					
Morrisville NC 27560		Preferred Stock	1.52%	250	247
Total Neonova Holding Company				344	289

**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Peerless Network, Inc. <sup>(6)</sup> 200 S. Wacker Drive, Suite 3100 Chicago IL 60606	Communications & Networking	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.27%		95	
		Preferred Stock	2.03%		1,000	800
Total Peerless Network, Inc.					1,095	800
Ping Identity Corporation 1099 18th Street Ste 2950 Denver, CO 80202	Communications & Networking	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.93%		52	168
Total Ping Identity Corporation					52	168
Purcell Systems, Inc. 16125 East Euclid Ave. Spokane, WA 99216	Communications & Networking	Preferred Stock Warrants	1.17%		123	386
Total Purcell Systems, Inc.					123	386
Rivulet Communications, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 12950 Worldgate Drive, Suite 100 Herndon, VA 21070-6005	Communications & Networking	Senior Debt Matures March 2010 Interest rate Prime + 8.00% or Floor rate of 12%		\$ 1,063	1,060	1,060
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.82%		146	
		Common Stock	0.18%		250	
Total Rivulet Communications, Inc.					1,456	1,060
Seven Networks, Inc. 2100 Seaport Blvd, Suite 100 Redwood City, CA 94063	Communications & Networking	Preferred Stock Warrants			174	11
Total Seven Networks, Inc.					174	11
Stoke, Inc. 5403 Betsy Ross Dr. Santa Clara, CA 94043	Communications & Networking	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.30%		53	81
Total Stoke, Inc.					53	81
Tectura Corporation 333 Twin Dolphin Drive, Suite 750 Redwood City, CA 94065	Communications & Networking	Senior Debt Matures September 2010 Interest rate Prime + 10.75% or Floor rate of 14.00%		\$ 1,875	1,875	1,875
		Revolving Line of Credit Matures July 2011 Interest rate Prime + 10.75% or Floor rate of 14.00%		\$ 9,908	10,238	10,238
		Revolving Line of Credit				

Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

		Matures July 2011	\$ 5,000	5,156	5,156
		Interest rate Prime + 10.75% or			
		Floor rate of 14.00%			
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.22%	51	
Total Tectura Corporation				17,320	17,269
Zayo Bandwidth, Inc.	Communications & Networking	Senior Debt			
950 Spruce St.		Matures November 2013			
Louisville, CO 80027		Interest rate Libor + 5.25%	\$ 24,750	24,750	24,317
Total Zayo Bandwith, Inc.				24,750	24,317
<b>Total Communications &amp; Networking (15.85%)</b>				<b>59,816</b>	<b>58,088</b>
Atrenta, Inc.	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.77%	102	99
2077 Gateway Place, Suite 300		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.25%	34	32
San Jose, CA 95110		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.30%	95	159
		Preferred Stock	0.25%	250	375
Total Atrenta, Inc.				481	665

**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Blurb, Inc. 580 California St., Suite 300 San Francisco, CA 94104	Software	Senior Debt Matures June 2011 Interest rate Prime + 3.50% or Floor rate of 8.5%		\$ 3,329	3,235	3,234
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.49%		25	128
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.52%		299	69
<b>Total Blurb, Inc.</b>					<b>3,559</b>	<b>3,431</b>
Braxton Technologies, LLC.  770 Wooten Road, Suite 105  Colorado Springs, CO 80915	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.62%		188	116
<b>Total Braxton Technologies, LLC.</b>					<b>188</b>	<b>116</b>
Bullhorn, Inc. 33-41 Farnsworth, 5th Floor Boston, MA 02210	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.80%		43	248
<b>Total Bullhorn, Inc.</b>					<b>43</b>	<b>248</b>
Clickfox, Inc. 3445 Peachtree Road, Suite 1250  Atlanta, GA 30326	Software	Senior Debt Matures September 2011  Interest rate Prime + 5.00% or  Floor rate of 10.25% Revolving Line of Credit Matures July 2010  Interest rate Prime + 8.50% or  Floor rate of 13.5%		\$ 3,754	3,683	3,683
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.94%	\$ 2,000	2,003	2,003
					177	143
<b>Total Clickfox, Inc.</b>					<b>5,863</b>	<b>5,829</b>
Forescout Technologies, Inc.  10001 De Anza Blvd., Suite 220  Cupertino, CA 95014	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.90%		99	77
<b>Total Forescout Technologies, Inc.</b>					<b>99</b>	<b>77</b>
GameLogic, Inc. 411 Waverly Oakds Road  Suite 312 Boston, MA 02452	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	2.67%		92	1
<b>Total GameLogic, Inc.</b>					<b>92</b>	<b>1</b>
HighJump Acquisition, LLC. 6455 City West Parkway	Software	Senior Debt Matures May 2013		\$ 15,000	15,000	15,000

Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

Eden Prairie, MN 55344		Interest rate Libor + 8.75% or			
		Floor rate of 12.00%			
Total HighJump Acquisition, LLC.				15,000	15,000
HighRoads, Inc.	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	3.18%	44	13
150 Presidential Way					
Woburn, MA 01801					
Total HighRoads, Inc.				44	13

**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Infologix, Inc. <sup>(4)(7)</sup> 101 E. County Line Road, Suite 210, Hatboro, PA 19040	Software	Senior Debt Matures November 2013  Interest rate 12.00% Convertible Senior Debt Matures November 2014 Interest rate 12.00% Revolving Line of Credit Matures May 2011  Interest rate 12.00% Common Stock Warrants Common Stock		\$ 5,500  \$ 5,000  \$ 7,559	5,500  5,004  7,559	5,500  10,060  7,559
Total Infologix, Inc.					23,823	32,184
Intelliden, Inc. 1975 Research Pkwy Suite 105 Colorado Springs, CO 80920	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.18%		18	
Total Intelliden, Inc.					18	
PSS Systems, Inc. 2525 E Charleston Road, Suite 201 Mountain View, CA 94303	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.38%		51	71
Total PSS Systems, Inc.					51	71
Rockyou, Inc. 585 Broadway Street, Suite A Redwood City, CA 94036	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.10%		117	140
Total Rockyou, Inc.					117	140
Savvion, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 5104 Old Ironsides Drive, Suite 205 Santa Clara, CA 95054	Software	Senior Debt Matures February 2011  Interest rate Prime + 7.75% or  Floor rate of 11.00% Revolving Line of Credit Matures May 2010 Interest rate Prime + 6.75% or Floor rate of 10.00% Preferred Stock Warrants		\$ 2,117  \$ 1,500	2,065  1,500	2,065  1,500
Total Savvion, Inc.			0.86%		52	183
					3,617	3,748
Sportvision, Inc. 4619 N. Ravenswood Chicago, IL 60640	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	1.89%		39	47
Total Sportvision, Inc.					39	47
WildTangent, Inc. 18578 NE 67th Court, Building 5	Software	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.17%		238	77



Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

Redmond, WA 98052

Total WildTangent, Inc.	238	77
<b>Total Software (16.82%)</b>	<b>53,272</b>	<b>61,647</b>

**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Luminus Devices, Inc. 1100 Technology Park Drive Billerica, MA 02821	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Senior Debt Matures December 2011 Interest rate 12.875%		\$ 1,062	1,062	1,062
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.28%		183	
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.14%		84	
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.69%		334	
<b>Total Luminus Devices, Inc.</b>					<b>1,663</b>	<b>1,062</b>
Maxvision Holding, LLC. 495 Production Ave. Huntsville, AL 35758	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Senior Debt Matures October 2012 Interest rate Prime + 5.50%		\$ 5,000	5,220	5,220
		Senior Debt Matures April 2012 Interest rate Prime + 2.25%		\$ 4,409	4,409	4,409
		Revolving Line of Credit Matures April 2012 Interest rate Prime + 2.25%		\$ 2,500	2,580	2,580
		Common Stock	1.25%		81	170
<b>Total Maxvision Holding, LLC</b>					<b>12,290</b>	<b>12,379</b>
Shocking Technologies, Inc. 5870 Hellyer Ave. San Jose, CA 95138	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Senior Debt Matures December 2010 Interest rate Prime + 2.50%		\$ 1,867	1,858	1,858
		Preferred Stock Warrants	1.44%		63	119
<b>Total Shocking Technologies, Inc.</b>					<b>1,921</b>	<b>1,977</b>
Spatial Photonics, Inc. 930 Hamlin Court Sunnyvale, CA 94086	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Senior Debt Matures April 2011 Interest rate 10.066%		\$ 1,980	1,956	1,957
		Senior Debt Mature April 2011 Interest rate 9.217%		\$ 197	197	197
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.52%		130	
		Preferred Stock	0.44%		500	129
<b>Total Spatial Photonics Inc.</b>					<b>2,783</b>	<b>2,283</b>
VeriWave, Inc. 8770 SW Nimbus Ave. Suite B Beaverton, OR 97008	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Preferred Stock Warrants	1.22%		54	
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.31%		46	
<b>Total VeriWave, Inc.</b>					<b>100</b>	
<b>Total Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware (4.83%)</b>					<b>18,757</b>	<b>17,701</b>
Aegerion Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 1140 Route 22 East, Suite 304 Bridgewater, NJ 08807	Specialty Pharmaceuticals	Senior Debt Matures September 2011 Interest rate Prime + 2.50% or Floor rate of 11.00%		\$ 5,481	5,482	5,482
		Convertible Senior Debt Matures December 2010		\$ 279	279	279
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.47%		69	253
		Preferred Stock	1.54%		1,000	1,019
<b>Total Aegerion Pharmaceuticals, Inc.</b>					<b>6,830</b>	<b>7,033</b>



**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>	
QuatRx Pharmaceuticals Company 777 East Eisenhower Pkwy Suite 100 Ann Arbor, MI 48108	Specialty Pharmaceuticals	Senior Debt		\$ 15,417	15,299	15,299	
		Matures October 2011					
		Interest rate Prime + 8.90% or					
		Floor rate of 12.15%					
		Convertible Senior Debt			\$ 1,888	1,888	2,861
		Matures March 2010					
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.22%		220		
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.18%		307		
		Preferred Stock	0.20%		750		
Total QuatRx Pharmaceuticals Company					18,464	18,160	
<b>Total Specialty Pharmaceuticals (6.87%)</b>					<b>25,294</b>	<b>25,193</b>	
Annie s, Inc. 564 Gateway Drive, Napa, CA 94558	Consumer & Business Products	Senior Debt - Second Lien		\$ 6,000	6,061	6,060	
		Matures April 2011					
		Interest rate LIBOR + 6.50% or					
		Floor rate of 10.00%					
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.47%		321	113	
Total Annie s, Inc.					6,382	6,173	
IPA Holdings, LLC. <sup>(4)</sup> 2775 Premiere Parkway, Suite 100 Deluth, GA 30097	Consumer & Business Products	Senior Debt		\$ 9,500	9,633	9,633	
		Matures November 2012					
		Interest rate Prime + 8.25% or					
		Floor rate of 12.5%					
		Senior Debt			\$ 6,500	6,625	6,625
		Matures May 2013					
		Interest rate Prime + 11.25% or					
Floor rate of 15.5%							
		Revolving Line of Credit					
		Matures November 2012					
		Interest rate Prime + 7.75% or					
		Floor rate of 12.00%		\$ 856	856	856	
		Common Stock Warrants	2.00%		275		
		Common Stock	1.00%		500	120	
Total IPA Holding, LLC.					17,889	17,234	
Market Force Information, Inc. 1877 Broadway, Suite 200 Boulder, CO 80302	Consumer & Business Products	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.37%		24		
		Preferred Stock	0.69%		500	267	
Total Market Force Information, Inc.					524	267	
OnTech Operations, Inc. <sup>(8)</sup> 15910 Bernardo Center Drive, Suite 270 San Diego, CA 92127	Consumer & Business Products	Senior Debt		\$ 106	106		
		Matures June 2010					
		Interest rate 16.00%					
		Preferred Stock Warrants	2.40%			452	
		Preferred Stock Warrants	1.60%		218		
		Preferred Stock	2.82%		1,000		
Total OnTech Operations, Inc.					1,776		

**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Wageworks, Inc. 1100 Park Place, 4th Floor San Mateo, CA 94403	Consumer & Business Products	Preferred Stock Warrants  Preferred Stock	1.00%  0.09%		252  250	1,425  368
Total Wageworks, Inc.					502	1,793
<b>Total Consumer &amp; Business Products (6.95%)</b>					<b>27,073</b>	<b>25,467</b>
Custom One Design, Inc. <sup>(8)</sup> 10 Corey St. Melrose, MA 02176	Semiconductors	Senior Debt Matures September 2010 Interest rate 11.50% Common Stock Warrants	   0.47%	\$ 426	422 18	122
Total Custom One Design, Inc.					440	122
Enpirion, Inc. 53 Frontage Road, Suite 210, Perryville III Corporate Park, Hampton, NJ 08807	Semiconductors	Senior Debt Matures August 2011 Interest rate Prime + 2.00% or Floor rate of 7.625% Preferred Stock Warrants	   0.21%	\$ 5,094	5,055 157	5,053 2
Total Enpirion, Inc.					5,212	5,055
iWatt Inc. 90 Albright Way Los Gatos, CA 95032	Semiconductors	Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock	0.24% 0.11% 0.13% 0.61% 1.05%		46 51 73 458 490	    950
Total iWatt Inc.					1,118	950
NEXX Systems, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 900 Middlesex Turnpike Billerica, MA 01821	Semiconductors	Senior Debt Matures March 2010 Interest rate Prime + 3.50% or Floor rate of 11.25% Revolving Line of Credit Matures June 2010 Interest rate Prime + 8.00% or Floor rate of 13.25% Revolving Line of Credit Matures June 2010 Interest rate Prime + 8.00% or Floor rate of 14.00% Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock	          2.11% 0.46%	\$ 565  \$ 3,000  \$ 500	423  3,000  500 562 6	423  3,000  500 784 332
Total NEXX Systems, Inc.					4,491	5,039
Quartics, Inc. 15241 Laguna Canyon Rd. Suite 200 Irvine, CA 92618	Semiconductors	Senior Debt Matures May 2010 Interest rate 10.00% Preferred Stock Warrants	   0.06%	\$ 139	134 53	134
Total Quartics, Inc.					187	134

**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Solarflare Communications, Inc. 9501 Jeronino Rd. Suite 100 Irvine, CA 92618	Semiconductors	Senior Debt Matures August 2010 Interest rate 11.75%		\$ 197	181	181
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.00%		83	
		Common Stock	0.00%		641	
Total Solarflare Communications, Inc.					905	181
<b>Total Semiconductors (3.13%)</b>					<b>12,353</b>	<b>11,481</b>
Labopharm USA, Inc. <sup>(5)</sup> 480 Armand-Frappier Blvd. Laval, Canada H7V 4B4	Drug Delivery	Senior Debt Matures June 2012 Interest rate 10.95%		\$ 20,000	19,718	19,718
		Common Stock Warrants	1.44%		687	1,307
Total Labopharm USA, Inc.					20,405	21,025
Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc. 1003 W. Cutting Blvd, Suite 110 Point Richmond, CA 94804	Drug Delivery	Common Stock Warrants	0.27%		36	94
		Common Stock Warrants	0.16%		51	91
		Common Stock	0.24%		500	283
Total Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc.					587	468
<b>Total Drug Delivery (5.86%)</b>					<b>20,992</b>	<b>21,493</b>
BARRX Medical, Inc. 540 Oakmead Parkway Sunnyvale, CA 94085	Therapeutic	Senior Debt Mature December 2011 Interest rate 11.00%		\$ 5,481	5,474	5,473
		Revolving Line of Credit Matures May 2010 Interest rate 10.00%		\$ 1,000	1,000	1,000
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.15%		76	111
		Preferred Stock	1.46%		1,500	2,303
Total BARRX Medical, Inc.					8,050	8,887
EKOS Corporation 22030 20th Ave. Southeast, Suite 101 Bothell, WA 98021	Therapeutic	Senior Debt Matures November 2010 Interest rate Prime + 2.00%		\$ 2,677	2,629	2,630
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.79%		175	
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.39%		153	
Total EKOS Corporation					2,957	2,630
Gelesis, Inc. <sup>(8)</sup> 222 Berkley Street, Suite 1040, Boston, MA 02116	Therapeutic	Senior Debt Matures May 2012 or Interest rate Prime + 7.5% Floor rate of 10.75%		\$ 2,847	2,814	
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.83%		58	
Total Gelesis, Inc.					2,872	
Gynesonics, Inc. 604 5th Ave Suite D Redwood City, CA 94063	Therapeutic	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.47%		18	5
		Preferred Stock	0.84%		250	627
Total Gynesonics, Inc.					268	632

## Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

Light Science Oncology, Inc. 15405 SE 37th Street, Suite 100, Bellevue, WA 98006	Therapeutic	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.15%	99	26
Total Light Science Oncology, Inc.				99	26

**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Novasys Medical, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 39684 Eureka Drive Newark, CA 94560	Therapeutic	Senior Debt Matures January 2010 Interest rate 9.70%		\$ 295	295	295
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.19%		71	
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.05%		54	
		Preferred Stock	1.83%		1,000	1,000
Total Novasys Medical, Inc.					1,420	1,295
<b>Total Therapeutic (3.68%)</b>					<b>15,666</b>	<b>13,470</b>
Cozi Group, Inc.  506 Second Avenue, Suite 710  Seattle, WA 98104	Internet Consumer  & Business Services	Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock	0.95% 0.65%		148 177	7
Total Cozi Group, Inc.					325	7
Invoke Solutions, Inc.  375 Totten Pond Road Suite 400  Waltham, MA 02451	Internet Consumer  & Business Services	Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock Warrants	1.48% 0.33%		56 26	129 29
Total Invoke Solutions, Inc.					82	158
Prism Education Group Inc.  233 Needham St. Newton,  MA 02464	Internet Consumer  & Business Services	Senior Debt  Matures December 2010 Interest rate 11.25%		\$ 801	789 43	790 104
Total Prism Education Group Inc.					832	894
RazorGator Interactive Group,  Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 11150 Santa Monica Blvd., Suite 500 Los Angeles, CA 90025	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Revolving Line of Credit Matures May 2010 Interest rate Prime + 6.00% or Floor rate of 12.00%		\$ 10,000	10,000	10,000
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.90%		14	223
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.11%		28	33
		Preferred Stock	1.20%		1,000	1,037
Total RazorGator Interactive Group, Inc.					11,042	11,293



**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Spa Chakra, Inc. <sup>(8)</sup> 111 West 57th Street, Suite 1400, New York, NY 10019	Internet Consumer & Business  Services	Senior Debt Matures October 2011  Interest rate 16.45% Senior Debt Matures April 2010 Interest rate 16.45% Senior Debt Matures December 2009 Interest rate 16.45% Senior Debt Matures February 2010 Interest rate 17% Senior Debt Matures February 2010 Interest rate 17% Preferred Stock Warrants		\$ 10,000  \$ 850  \$ 250  \$ 1,225  \$ 157	10,296  850  250  1,225  157 1	5,518  850  250  1,225  157
Total Spa Chakra, Inc.					12,779	8,000
<b>Total Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services (5.55%)</b>					<b>25,060</b>	<b>20,352</b>
Lilliputian Systems, Inc. 36 Jonspin Road Wilmington, MA 01887	Energy	Preferred Stock Warrants Common Stock Warrants	0.07% 0.05%		107 48	104
Total Lilliputian Systems, Inc.					155	104
<b>Total Energy (0.03%)</b>					<b>155</b>	<b>104</b>
Box.net, Inc. 1895 El Camino Real, Palo Alto, CA 94306	Information Services	Senior Debt Matures May 2011 Interest rate Prime + 1.50% Senior Debt Matures September 2011 Interest rate Prime + 0.50% Preferred Stock Warrants		\$ 676  \$ 287	658  287 73	658  287 53
Total Box.net, Inc.					1,018	998
Buzznet, Inc. 6464 Sunset Blvd, Suite 650 Los Angeles, CA 90028	Information Services	Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock	0.01% 0.15%		9 250	74
Total Buzznet, Inc.					259	74
XL Education Corp. 185 Madison Avenue, 5th Floor New York, NY 10016	Information Services	Common Stock	0.01%		880	880
Total XL Education Corp.					880	880
hi5 Networks, Inc. 55 Second St. Suite 300 San Francisco, CA 94105	Information Services	Senior Debt Matures December 2010  Interest rate Prime + 2.5%		\$ 1,559	1,559	1,559

Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

	Senior Debt			
	Matures June 2011			
	Interest rate Prime + 0.5%	\$ 3,401	3,356	3,356
	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.54%	213	
Total hi5 Networks, Inc.			5,128	4,915

**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Jab Wireless, Inc. 5350 S. Roslyn St. Suite 306 Greenwood Village, CO 80111	Information Services	Senior Debt Matures November 2012		\$ 14,750	14,891	14,892
		Interest rate Prime + 3.50% or Floor rate of 9.5% Revolving Line of Credit Matures October 2010		\$ 2,500	2,504	2,504
		Interest rate Prime + 3.50% or Floor rate of 9.5% Preferred Stock Warrants	0.90%		265	151
Total Jab Wireless, Inc.					17,660	17,547
Solutionary, Inc. 9420 Underwood Avenue, 3rd Floor Omaha, NE 68114	Information Services	Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock	0.79% 0.02% 0.35%		94 2 250	83
Total Solutionary, Inc.					346	83
Ancestry.com, Inc. 360 West 4800 North Provo, UT 84604	Information Services	Common Stock	0.16%		452	880
Total Ancestry.com, Inc.					452	880
Good Technologies, Inc. 101 Redwood Shores Parkway, Suite 400, Redwood Shores, CA 94065		Common Stock	0.17%		603	603
Total Good Technologies, Inc.					603	603
Coveroo, Inc. 333 Bryant Street San Francisco, CA 94107	Information Services	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.08%		7	
Total Coveroo, Inc.					7	
Zeta Interactive Corporation 99 Park Ave, 23 <sup>rd</sup> Floor New York, NY 10016	Information Services	Senior Debt Matures November 2012 Interest rate 9.50% Senior Debt Matures November 2012 Interest rate 10.50% Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock		\$ 4,731 \$ 6,484	4,732 6,719 172 500	4,731 6,719 310
Total Zeta Interactive Corporation					12,123	11,760
<b>Total Information Services (10.30%)</b>					<b>38,476</b>	<b>37,740</b>

## Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

Novadaq Technologies, Inc. 2585 Skymark Ave. Suite 306 Mississauga, Ontario L4W 4L5	Diagnostic	Common Stock	0.83%	1,567	542
Total Novadaq Technologies, Inc.				1,567	542

**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Optiscan Biomedical, Corp. 1105 Atlantic Ave, Suite 101 Alameda, CA 94501	Diagnostic	Senior Debt Matures June 2011 Interest rate 10.25%		\$ 7,696	7,516	7,515
		Preferred Stock Warrants	2.61%		760	342
		Preferred Stock	3.84%		3,000	3,000
Total Optiscan Biomedical, Corp.					11,276	10,857
<b>Total Diagnostic (3.11%)</b>					<b>12,843</b>	<b>11,399</b>
Kamada, LTD. <sup>(5)</sup> Science Park, Kiryat Weizmann, Ness Ziona , Israel, 76327	Biotechnology Tools	Common Stock Warrants Common Stock	0.29% 0.99%		159 794	149 1,161
Total Kamada, LTD.					953	1,310
Labcyte, Inc. 1190 Borregas Avenue Sunnyvale, CA 94089	Biotechnology Tools	Senior Debt Matures November 2012  Interest rate Prime + 8.6% or Floor rate of 11.85%		\$ 3,500	3,323	3,323
		Common Stock Warrants	0.70%		192	235
Total Labcyte, Inc.					3,515	3,558
NuGEN Technologies, Inc. 821 Industrial Road, Unit A San Carlos, CA 94070	Biotechnology Tools	Senior Debt Matures November 2010  Interest rate Prime + 3.45% or Floor rate of 6.75%		\$ 785	779	780
		Senior Debt Matures November 2010 Interest rate Prime + 1.70% or Floor rate of 6.75%		\$ 442	442	442
		Preferred Stock Warrants	1.05%		45	391
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.15%		33	41
		Preferred Stock	0.97%		500	587
Total NuGEN Technologies, Inc.					1,799	2,241
Solace Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> Four Cambridge Center, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Floor, Cambridge, MA 02142	Biotechnology Tools	Senior Debt Matures August 2012 Interest rate Prime + 4.25% or Floor rate of 9.85%		\$ 2,617	2,561	2,560
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.39%		42	
		Preferred Stock Warrants	0.39%		54	
Total Solace Pharmaceuticals, Inc.					2,657	2,560
<b>Total Biotechnology Tools (2.64%)</b>					<b>8,924</b>	<b>9,669</b>



**Table of Contents**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class Held on a Fully Diluted Basis<sup>(9)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Crux Biomedical, Inc. 3274 Alpine Rd. Portola Valley, CA 94028	Surgical Devices	Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock	0.14% 0.28%		37 250	26
<b>Total Crux Biomedical, Inc.</b>					<b>287</b>	<b>26</b>
Transmedics, Inc. <sup>(8)</sup> 200 Minuteman Road, Suite 302, Andover, MA 01810	Surgical Devices	Senior Debt Matures December 2011 Interest rate Prime + 5.25% or Floor rate of 10.50% Preferred Stock Warrants		\$ 9,475	9,384 225	2,384
<b>Total Transmedics, Inc.</b>					<b>9,609</b>	<b>2,384</b>
<b>Total Surgical Devices (0.66%)</b>					<b>9,896</b>	<b>2,410</b>
Glam Media, Inc. 8000 Marina Blvd., Suite 130, Brisbane, CA 94005	Media/Content/ Info	Preferred Stock Warrants	0.24%		482	283
<b>Total Glam Media, Inc.</b>					<b>482</b>	<b>283</b>
Waterfront Media Inc. 45 Main Street, Suite 800 Brooklyn, NY 11201	Media/Content/ Info	Preferred Stock Warrants Preferred Stock	0.31% 0.41%		60 1,000	592 1,500
<b>Total Waterfront Media Inc.</b>					<b>1,060</b>	<b>2,092</b>
<b>Total Media/Content/Info (0.65%)</b>					<b>1,542</b>	<b>2,375</b>
<b>Total Investments</b>					<b>380,351</b>	<b>370,437</b>

\* Value as a percent of net assets

- (1) Preferred and common stock, warrants, and equity interests are generally non-income producing.
- (2) Gross unrealized appreciation, gross unrealized depreciation, and net depreciation for federal income tax purposes totaled \$17,409, \$30,495 and \$13,086, respectively. The tax cost of investments is \$379,600.
- (3) Except for warrants in six publicly traded companies and common stock in four publicly traded companies, all investments are restricted at December 31, 2009 and were valued at fair value as determined in good faith by the Board of Directors. No unrestricted securities of the same issuer are outstanding. The Company uses the Standard Industrial Code for classifying the industry grouping of its portfolio companies.
- (4) Debt investments of this portfolio company have been pledged as collateral under the Wells Facility.
- (5) Non-U.S. company or the company's principal place of business is outside the United States.
- (6) Affiliate investment that is defined under the Investment Company Act of 1940 as companies in which HTGC owns at least 5% but not more than 25% of the voting securities of the company. All other investments are less than 5% owned.
- (7) Control investment is defined under the Investment Act of 1940 as companies in which HTGC owns at least 25% or more of the voting securities of such Company or has greater than 50% representation on its Board.
- (8) Debt is on non-accrual status at December 31, 2009, and is therefore considered non-income producing.
- (9) The percentage of class held on a fully diluted basis represents the percentage of the class of security we may own assuming we exercise our warrants or options (whether or not they are in-the-money) and assuming that warrants, options or convertible securities held by others are not exercised or converted. We have not included any security which is subject to significant vesting contingencies. Common stock, preferred stock, warrants, options and equity interests are generally non-income producing and restricted. The percentage was calculated based on the most current outstanding share information available to us (1) in the case of private companies, provided by that company, and (2) in the case of public companies, provided by that company's most recent public filings with the SEC.





**Table of Contents****SENIOR SECURITIES**

Information about our senior securities is shown in the following table for the periods as of December 31, 2009, 2008, 2007, 2006, 2005 and 2004. The information has been derived from our audited financial statements included elsewhere herein, which have been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, an independent registered accounting firm, as of and for the periods ending December 31, 2009, 2008, 2007, 2006, 2005 and 2004. See Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations Borrowings and Note 14 to the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements for updated senior securities information.

<b>Class and Year</b>	<b>Total Amount Outstanding Exclusive of Treasury Securities<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Asset Coverage per Unit<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Average Market Value per Unit<sup>(3)</sup></b>
<b>Bridge Loan Credit Facility with Alcmene Funding L.L.C.</b>			
December 31, 2004			N/A
December 31, 2005	\$ 25,000,000	\$ 2,505	N/A
December 31, 2006			N/A
December 31, 2007			N/A
December 31, 2008			N/A
December 31, 2009			N/A
<b>Securitized Credit Facility</b>			
December 31, 2004			N/A
December 31, 2005	\$ 51,000,000	\$ 2,505	N/A
December 31, 2006	\$ 41,000,000	\$ 7,230	N/A
December 31, 2007	\$ 79,200,000	\$ 6,755	N/A
December 31, 2008	\$ 89,582,000	\$ 6,689	N/A
December 31, 2009 (unaudited)			N/A
<b>Small Business Administration Debentures<sup>(4)</sup></b>			
December 31, 2004			N/A
December 31, 2005			N/A
December 31, 2006			N/A
December 31, 2007	\$ 55,050,000	\$ 9,718	N/A
December 31, 2008	\$ 127,200,000	\$ 4,711	N/A
December 31, 2009 (unaudited)	\$ 130,600,000	\$ 3,792	N/A
<b>Wells Facility</b>			
December 31, 2004			N/A
December 31, 2005			N/A
December 31, 2006			N/A
December 31, 2007			N/A
December 31, 2008			N/A
December 31, 2009 (unaudited)	\$ 417,000	\$ 1,187,649	N/A
<b>Union Bank Facility<sup>(5)</sup></b>			
December 31, 2004			N/A
December 31, 2005			N/A
December 31, 2006			N/A
December 31, 2007			N/A
December 31, 2008			N/A
December 31, 2009			N/A

(1) Total amount of each class of senior securities outstanding at the end of the period presented, rounded to nearest thousand.

(2) The asset coverage ratio for a class of senior securities representing indebtedness is calculated as our consolidated total assets, less all liabilities and indebtedness not represented by senior securities, divided by senior securities representing indebtedness. This asset coverage ratio is multiplied by \$1,000 to determine the Asset Coverage per Unit.

(3) Not applicable because senior securities are not registered for public trading.

(4) Issued by our SBIC subsidiary to the SBA. These categories of senior securities were not subject to the asset coverage requirements of the 1940 Act.

(5) In February 2010, we closed on a \$20.0 million credit facility with Union Bank, a one year revolving credit facility.

**Table of Contents**

**SALES OF COMMON STOCK BELOW NET ASSET VALUE**

On June 3, 2009, our common stockholders voted to allow us to issue common stock at a discount from our net asset value (NAV) per share for a period of one year ending on June 3, 2010. In connection with the receipt of such stockholder approval, we agreed to limit the number of shares that we issue at a price below net asset value pursuant to this authorization so that the aggregate dilutive effect on our then outstanding shares will not exceed 20%.

In order to sell shares pursuant to this authorization:

a majority of our independent directors who have no financial interest in the sale must have approved the sale; and

a majority of such directors, who are not interested persons of the Company, in consultation with the underwriter or underwriters of the offering if it is to be underwritten, must have determined in good faith, and as of a time immediately prior to the first solicitation by us or on our behalf of firm commitments to purchase such shares or immediately prior to the issuance of such shares, that the price at which such shares are to be sold is not less than a price which closely approximates the market value of those shares, less any underwriting commission or discount.

Any offering of common stock below NAV per share will be designed to raise capital for investment in accordance with our investment objectives and business strategies.

In making a determination that an offering below NAV per share is in our and our stockholders' best interests, our Board of Directors would consider a variety of factors including:

The effect that an offering below NAV per share would have on our stockholders, including the potential dilution they would experience as a result of the offering;

The amount per share by which the offering price per share and the net proceeds per share are less than the most recently determined NAV per share;

The relationship of recent market prices of our common stock to NAV per share and the potential impact of the offering on the market price per share of our common stock;

Whether the proposed offering price would closely approximate the market value of our shares;

The potential market impact of being able to raise capital during the current financial market difficulties;

The nature of any new investors anticipated to acquire shares in the offering;

The anticipated rate of return on and quality, type and availability of investments to be funded with the proceeds from the offering, if any; and

The leverage available to us, both before and after any offering, and the terms thereof.

## Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

Sales by us of our common stock at a discount from NAV pose potential risks for our existing stockholders whether or not they participate in the offering, as well as for new investors who participate in the offering.

The following three headings and accompanying tables will explain and provide hypothetical examples on the impact of an offering at a price less than NAV per share on three different sets of investors:

existing stockholders who do not purchase any shares in the offering;

existing stockholders who purchase a relatively small amount of shares in the offering or a relatively large amount of shares in the offering; and

new investors who become stockholders by purchasing shares in the offering.

**Table of Contents****Impact on Existing Stockholders who do not Participate in the Offering**

Our existing stockholders who do not participate in an offering below NAV per share or who do not buy additional shares in the secondary market at the same or lower price we obtain in the offering (after expenses and commissions) face the greatest potential risks. These stockholders will experience an immediate decrease (often called dilution) in the NAV of the shares they hold and their NAV per share. These stockholders will also experience a disproportionately greater decrease in their participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than the increase we will experience in our assets, potential earning power and voting interests due to the offering. These stockholders may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential decreases in NAV per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and level of discount to NAV increases.

The following table illustrates the level of NAV dilution that would be experienced by a nonparticipating stockholder in three different hypothetical offerings of different sizes and levels of discount from NAV per share. Actual sales prices and discounts may differ from the presentation below.

The examples assume that Company XYZ has 3,000,000 common shares outstanding, \$40,000,000 in total assets and \$10,000,000 in total liabilities. The current net asset value and NAV are thus \$30,000,000 and \$10.00. The table illustrates the dilutive effect on nonparticipating Stockholder A of (1) an offering of 150,000 shares (5% of the outstanding shares) with proceeds to the Company XYZ at \$9.50 per share after offering expenses and commission, (2) an offering of 300,000 shares (10% of the outstanding shares) with proceeds to the Company XYZ at \$9.00 per share after offering expenses and commissions and (3) an offering of 600,000 shares (20% of the outstanding shares) with proceeds to the Company XYZ at \$8.00 per share after offering expenses and commissions.

	Prior to Sale Below NAV	Example 1 5% Offering at 5% Discount		Example 2 10% Offering at 10% Discount		Example 3 20% Offering at 20% Discount	
		Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change
<b>Offering Price</b>							
Price per Share to Public <sup>(1)</sup>		\$ 10.00		\$ 9.47		\$ 8.42	
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer		\$ 9.50		\$ 9.00		\$ 8.00	
<b>Decrease to NAV</b>							
Total Shares Outstanding	3,000,000	3,150,000	5.00%	3,300,000	10.00%	3,600,000	20.00%
NAV per Share	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.98	(0.20)%	\$ 9.91	(0.90)%	\$ 9.67	(3.30)%
<b>Share Dilution to Stockholder</b>							
Shares Held by Stockholder A	30,000	30,000		30,000		30,000	
Percentage of Shares Held by Stockholder A	1.00%	0.95%	(4.76)%	0.91%	(9.09)%	0.83%	(16.67)%
<b>Total Asset Values</b>							
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	\$ 300,000	\$ 299,286	(0.20)%	\$ 297,273	(0.90)%	\$ 290,000	(3.30)%
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to Be \$10.00 per Share)	\$ 300,000	\$ 300,000		\$ 300,000		\$ 300,000	
Total Dilution to Stockholder A (Change in Total NAV Held By Stockholder)		\$ (714)		\$ (2,727)		\$ (10,000)	
<b>Per Share Amounts</b>							
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A		\$ 9.98		\$ 9.91		\$ 9.67	
Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10.00 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)	\$ 10.00	\$ 10.00		\$ 10.00		\$ 10.00	
		\$ (0.02)		\$ (0.09)		\$ (0.33)	

Dilution per Share Held by Stockholder A			
Percentage Dilution per Share Held by Stockholder A	(0.20)%	(0.90)%	(3.30)%

(1) Assumes 5% in selling compensation and expenses paid by Company XYZ.

**Table of Contents****Impact on Existing Stockholders who do Participate in the Offering**

Our existing stockholders who participate in an offering below NAV per share or who buy additional shares in the secondary market at the same or lower price as we obtain in the offering (after expenses and commissions) will experience the same types of NAV dilution as the nonparticipating stockholders, albeit at a lower level, to the extent they purchase less than the same percentage of the discounted offering as their interest in our shares immediately prior to the offering. The level of NAV dilution to such stockholders will decrease as the number of shares such stockholders purchase increases. Existing stockholders who buy more than their proportionate percentage will experience NAV dilution but will, in contrast to existing stockholders who purchase less than their proportionate share of the offering, experience an increase (often called accretion) in NAV per share over their investment per share and will also experience a disproportionately greater increase in their participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than our increase in assets, potential earning power and voting interests due to the offering. The level of accretion will increase as the excess number of shares purchased by such stockholder increases. Even a stockholder who over-participates will, however, be subject to the risk that we may make additional discounted offerings in which such stockholder does not participate, in which case such a stockholder will experience NAV dilution as described above in such subsequent offerings. These stockholders may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential decreases in NAV per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and the level of discount to NAV increases.

The following chart illustrates the level of dilution and accretion in the hypothetical 20% discount offering from the prior chart (Example 3) for a stockholder that acquires shares equal to (1) 50% of its proportionate share of the offering (i.e., 3,000 shares, which is 0.5% of an offering of 600,000 shares rather than its 1.0% proportionate share) and (2) 150% of such percentage (i.e., 9,000 shares, which is 1.5% of an offering of 600,000 shares rather than its 1.0% proportionate share). The prospectus supplement pursuant to which any discounted offering is made will include a chart for this example based on the actual number of shares in such offering and the actual discount from the most recently determined NAV per share.

	Prior to Sale Below NAV	50% Participation Following Sale	% Change	150% Participation Following Sale	% Change
<b>Offering Price</b>					
Price per Share to Public <sup>(1)</sup>		\$ 8.42		\$ 8.42	
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer		\$ 8.00		\$ 8.00	
<b>Increase in Shares and Decrease to NAV</b>					
Total Shares Outstanding	3,000,000	3,600,000	20.00%	3,600,000	20.00%
NAV per Share	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.67	(3.33)%	\$ 9.67	(3.33)%
<b>Dilution/Accretion to Participating Stockholder A</b>					
<b>Share Dilution/Accretion</b>					
Shares Held by Stockholder A	30,000	33,000	10.00%	39,000	30.00%
Percentage Outstanding Held by Stockholder A	1.00%	0.92%	(8.33)%	1.08%	8.33%
<b>NAV Dilution/Accretion</b>					
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	\$ 300,000	\$ 319,110	6.33%	\$ 377,130	25.67%
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10.00 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)		\$ 325,260		\$ 375,780	
Total Dilution/Accretion to Stockholder A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)		\$ (6,150)		\$ 1,350	
<b>NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share</b>					
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A		\$ 9.67		\$ 9.67	
Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10.00 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.86	(1.44)%	\$ 9.64	(3.65)%
NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)		\$ (0.19)		\$ 0.03	
Percentage NAV Dilution/Accretion Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share Divided by Investment per Share)			(1.93)%		0.31%

- (1) Assumes 5% in selling compensation and expenses paid by Company XYZ.



**Table of Contents****Impact on New Investors**

Investors who are not currently stockholders, but who participate in an offering below NAV and whose investment per share is greater than the resulting NAV per share due to selling compensation and expenses paid by us will experience an immediate decrease, albeit small, in the NAV of their shares and their NAV per share compared to the price they pay for their shares (Example 1 below). On the other hand, investors who are not currently stockholders, but who participate in an offering below NAV per share and whose investment per share is also less than the resulting NAV per share will experience an immediate increase in the NAV of their shares and their NAV per share compared to the price they pay for their shares (Examples 2 and 3 below). These latter investors will experience a disproportionately greater participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than our increase in assets, potential earning power and voting interests. These investors will, however, be subject to the risk that we may make additional discounted offerings in which such new stockholder does not participate, in which case such new stockholder will experience dilution as described above in such subsequent offerings. These investors may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential decreases in NAV per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and level of discount to NAV increases.

The following chart illustrates the level of dilution or accretion for new investors that would be experienced by a new investor in the same hypothetical 5%, 10% and 20% discounted offerings as described in the first chart above. The illustration is for a new investor who purchases the same percentage (1.00%) of the shares in the offering as Stockholder A in the prior examples held immediately prior to the offering. The prospectus supplement pursuant to which any discounted offering is made will include a chart for these examples based on the actual number of shares in such offering and the actual discount from the most recently determined NAV per share.

	Example 1 5% Offering at 5% Discount			Example 2 10% Offering at 10% Discount		Example 3 20% Offering at 20% Discount	
	Prior to Sale Below NAV	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change
<b>Offering Price</b>							
Price per Share to Public(1)		\$ 10.00		\$ 9.47		\$ 8.42	
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer		\$ 9.50		\$ 9.00		\$ 8.00	
<b>Increase in Shares and Decrease to NAV</b>							
Total Shares Outstanding	3,000,000	3,150,000	5.00%	3,300,000	10.00%	3,600,000	20.00%
NAV per Share	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.98	(0.20)%	\$ 9.91	(0.90)%	\$ 9.67	(3.30)%
<b>Dilution/Accretion to New Investor A</b>							
<b>Share Dilution</b>							
Shares Held by Investor A		1,500		3,000		6,000	
Percentage Outstanding Held by Investor A	0.00%	0.05%		0.09%		0.17%	
<b>NAV Dilution</b>							
Total NAV Held by Investor A		\$ 14,970		\$ 29,730		\$ 58,020	
Total Investment by Investor A (At Price to Public)		\$ 15,000		\$ 28,410		\$ 50,520	
Total Dilution/Accretion to Investor A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)		\$ (30)		\$ 1,320		\$ 7,500	
<b>NAV Dilution per Share</b>							
NAV per Share Held by Investor A		\$ 9.98		\$ 9.91		\$ 9.67	
Investment per Share Held by Investor A		\$ 10.00		\$ 9.47		\$ 8.42	
NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share Experienced by Investor A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)		\$ (0.02)		\$ 0.44		\$ 1.25	

Edgar Filing: HERCULES TECHNOLOGY GROWTH CAPITAL INC - Form N-2

Percentage NAV Dilution/Accretion Experienced by Investor A (NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share Divided by Investment per Share)	(0.20)%	4.65%	14.85%
--	---------	-------	--------

(1) Assumes 5% in selling compensation and expenses paid by Company XYZ.

**Table of Contents****MANAGEMENT**

Our business and affairs are managed under the direction of our Board of Directors. Our Board of Directors elects our officers who serve at the discretion of the Board of Directors. Our Board of Directors currently consists of four members, one who is an interested person of Hercules Technology Growth Capital as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act and three who are not interested persons and who we refer to as our independent directors.

**Directors, Executive Officers and Key Employees**

Our executive officers, directors and key employees and their positions are set forth below. The address for each executive officer, director and key employee is c/o Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc., 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Age</b>	<b>Positions</b>
<b>Interested Director:</b>		
Manuel A. Henriquez <sup>(1)</sup>	46	Chairman of the Board of Directors, President and Chief Executive Officer
<b>Independent Directors:</b>		
Robert P. Badavas <sup>(2)(3)(4)(5)</sup>	57	Director
Joseph W. Chow <sup>(2)(3)(4)(5)</sup>	57	Director
Allyn C. Woodward, Jr. <sup>(2)(3)(4)(5)</sup>	69	Director
<b>Executive Officers:</b>		
Samir Bhaumik	46	Senior Managing Director and Technology Group Head
H. Scott Harvey	55	Secretary and Chief Legal Officer
David M. Lund	56	Vice President of Finance and Chief Financial Officer
Scott Gable	45	Chief Operating Officer
Parag I. Shah	38	Senior Managing Director and Life Sciences Group Head

(1) Mr. Henriquez is an interested person, as defined in section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act, of the Company due to his position as an executive officer of the Company.

(2) Member of the Audit Committee.

(3) Member of the Valuation Committee.

(4) Member of the Compensation Committee.

(5) Member of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee.

Set forth below is information, as of April 21, 2010, regarding our current directors, including each director's (i) name and age; (ii) a brief description of their recent business experience, including present occupations and employment during at least the last five years; (iii) certain directorships if any that each person holds and has held during the past five years; and (iv) the year in which each person became a director of the Company. As the information that follows indicates, the nominee and each continuing director brings strong and unique experience, qualifications, attributes, and skills to the Board. This provides the Board, collectively, with competence, experience, and perspective in a variety of areas, including: (i) corporate governance and Board service; (ii) executive management, finance, and accounting; (iii) venture capital financing with a technology-related focus; (iv) business acumen; and (v) an ability to exercise sound judgment.

Moreover, the nominating and corporate governance committee believes that it is important to seek a broad diversity of experience, professions, skills, geographic representation and backgrounds. The nominating and corporate governance committee does not assign specific weights to particular criteria and no particular criterion is necessarily applicable to all prospective nominees. We believe that the backgrounds and qualifications of the directors, considered as a group, should provide a significant composite mix of experience, knowledge and abilities that will allow the Board to fulfill its responsibilities. Our Board does not have a specific diversity policy, but considers diversity of race, religion, national origin, gender, sexual orientation, disability, cultural background and professional experiences in evaluating candidates for Board membership.

## Table of Contents

### **Interested Director**

**Manuel A. Henriquez** is a co-founder of the Company and has been our Chairman and CEO since December 2003 and our President since April 2005. Prior to co-founding the Company, Mr. Henriquez was a Partner at VantagePoint Venture Partners, a \$2.5 billion multi-stage technology venture fund, from August 2000 through July 2003. Prior to VantagePoint Venture Partners, Mr. Henriquez was the President and Chief Investment Officer of Comdisco Ventures, a division of Comdisco, Inc., a leading technology and financial services company, from November 1999 to March 2000. Prior to that, from March 1997 to November 1999, Mr. Henriquez was a Managing Director of Comdisco Ventures. Mr. Henriquez was a senior member of the investment team at Comdisco Ventures that originated over \$2.0 billion of equipment lease, debt and equity transactions from 1997 to 2000. Mr. Henriquez serves on the board of directors of three of the Company's portfolio companies: Spa Chakra Acquisition Corp., a luxury provider of health and wellness care; Infologix, Inc. (NASDAQ: IFLG), a provider of enterprise mobility solutions for healthcare and commercial industries; and E-Band Communications Corporation, supplier of ultra high capacity of wireless solutions. Also, Mr. Henriquez serves on the board of directors of Charles Armstrong School, an independent elementary and middle school that serves students with language-based learning differences. Mr. Henriquez received a B.S. in Business Administration from Northeastern University.

Through his broad experience as an officer and director of several private and public companies, in addition to skills acquired with firms engaged in investment banking, banking and financial services, Mr. Henriquez brings to the Company a unique business expertise and knowledge of financing technology related companies as well as extensive financial and risk assessment abilities. Mr. Henriquez possesses a vast array of knowledge in venture capital financing which assists us in the markets in which we compete. Mr. Henriquez's years of experience as our Chairman and CEO since co-founding the Company demonstrates his leadership skills that are valuable in his role as our Chairman and CEO.

### **Independent Directors**

Each of the following directors is independent under Nasdaq Global Market rules and is not an interested director as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act.

**Robert P. Badavas** has served as a director since March 2006. Mr. Badavas is a private investor and, since his retirement from TAC Worldwide, a technical staffing, workforce management and business services company, has been serving as President of Petros Ventures, Inc., a management and advisory services company. Mr. Badavas served as President and Chief Executive Officer of TAC Worldwide from December 2005 until his retirement in October 2009, and was Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of TAC Worldwide from November 2003 to December 2005. Prior to joining TAC Worldwide, Mr. Badavas was Senior Principal and Chief Operating Officer of Atlas Venture, a venture capital firm, from September 2001 to September 2003. Mr. Badavas also serves on the board of directors and is chairman of the audit committee of both Airvana, Inc. (NASDAQ: AIRV), a provider of mobile broadband network infrastructure products, and Constant Contact, Inc. (NASDAQ: CTCT), a provider of on demand email marketing, event marketing and online survey solutions for small organizations. In addition, Mr. Badavas serves on the board of directors of The Learning Center for the Deaf in Framingham, MA, Hellenic College/Holy Cross School of Theology in Brookline, MA and Bentley University in Waltham, MA. In addition to being a certified public accountant with nine years of experience at PriceWaterhouseCoopers, an independent registered public accounting firm, and the chief financial officer of a publicly traded company, Mr. Badavas recently completed a program that discussed strategies to make corporate boards more effective at the Harvard Business School. Mr. Badavas is a graduate of Bentley University with a BS in Accounting and Finance. Mr. Badavas is a graduate of Bentley University with a BS in Accounting and Finance.

Through his prior experience as a director, chief executive officer, chief operating officer and chief financial officer, Mr. Badavas brings business expertise, finance and audit skills to his Board service with the Company.

## Table of Contents

Mr. Badavas' expertise, experience and skills closely align with our operations, and his prior investment experience with a venture capital firm facilitates an in-depth understanding of our investment business. Mr. Badavas' expertise and experience also qualify him to serve as Chairman of our audit committee and financial expert.

**Joseph W. Chow** has served as a director since February 2004. Mr. Chow is Executive Vice President at State Street Corporation (NYSE: STT), a provider of financial services to institutional investors, where he is responsible for the development of business strategies for emerging economies. Previously, he was Head of Risk and Corporate Administration, having retired from the company in August 2003 and rejoined in July 2004. Prior to August 2003, Mr. Chow was Executive Vice President and Head of Credit and Risk Policy at State Street. Before joining State Street, Mr. Chow worked at Bank of Boston in various international and corporate banking roles from 1981 to 1990 and specialized in the financing of emerging-stage high technology companies. In addition, Mr. Chow serves on the board and executive committee of the Greater Boston Chamber of Commerce and the board of the Hong Kong Association of Massachusetts. Mr. Chow is a graduate of Brandeis University with a B.A. in Economics. He also received an M.C.P. from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and an M.S. in Management (finance) from the MIT Sloan School of Management.

Through his experience as an officer of a major financial institution, Mr. Chow brings business expertise, finance and risk assessment skills to his Board service with the Company. Mr. Chow's experience and skills closely align with our business, and his lending and credit experience facilitates an in-depth understanding of risk associated with the structuring of investments in technology related companies. Mr. Chow's risk management expertise and credit related experience also qualify him to serve as Chairman of our valuation committee.

**Allyn C. Woodward, Jr.** has served as a director since February 2004. Mr. Woodward was Vice Chairman of Adams Harkness Financial Group (AHFG-formerly Adams, Harkness & Hill) from April 2001 until January 2006 when AHFG was sold to Canaccord, Inc. He previously served as President of AHFG from 1995 to 2001. AHFG was an independent institutional research, brokerage and investment banking firm headquartered in Boston, MA. Prior to joining AHFG, Mr. Woodward worked for Silicon Valley Bank from April 1990 to April 1995, initially as Executive Vice President and Co-founder of the Wellesley, MA office and more recently as Senior Executive Vice President and Chief Operating Officer of the parent bank in California. Silicon Valley Bank is a commercial bank, headquartered in Santa Clara, CA whose principal lending focus is directed toward the technology, healthcare and venture capital industries. Prior to joining Silicon Valley Bank, Mr. Woodward was Senior Vice President and Group Manager of the Technology group at Bank of New England, Boston, MA where he was employed from 1963-1990. Mr. Woodward is currently the Chairman of the Board of Directors and a member of the Compensation Committee of Lecroy Corporation (NASDAQ: LCRY), a leading provider of oscilloscopes, protocol analyzers and related test and measurement solutions. He is also a former Director of Viewlogic and Cayenne Software, Inc. Mr. Woodward serves on the Board of three private companies and is on the Board of Advisors of five venture capital funds. Mr. Woodward holds an Advanced Professional Director Certification from the Corporate Director Group, a public company director education and credentialing organization, and is a member of the National Association of Corporate Directors. Mr. Woodward is on the Board of Overseers and a member of the Finance Committee of Newton Wellesley Hospital, a 250 bed hospital located in Newton, MA. Mr. Woodward is on the Board of Overseers and a member of the Finance Committee of Newton Wellesley Hospital, a 250 bed hospital located in Newton, MA. Mr. Woodward is on the Board of Overseers and the Investment Committee and the Finance Committee of Babson College in Babson Park, MA. Mr. Woodward graduated from Babson College with a degree in finance and accounting. He also graduated from the Stonier Graduate School of Banking at Rutgers University.

Mr. Woodward's executive and board experience brings extensive business, finance and investment expertise to his Board service with the company. His experiences with financial services, bank and technology-related companies provide a unique perspective on matters involving business, finance and technology. Mr. Woodward's many board related experiences makes him skilled in leading committees requiring substantive expertise. He is uniquely qualified to assist in the continued development of our Board's policies regarding

---

## Table of Contents

compensation and governance best practices by serving as Chairman of our compensation committee and nominating and corporate governance committee and by serving as our lead independent director.

### **Non-director Executive Officers**

**Samir Bhaumik** joined our Company in November 2004 as a Managing Director and was promoted to Senior Managing Director in June 2006. In March 2008, Mr. Bhaumik was promoted by our Board to the position of Technology Group Head. Mr. Bhaumik previously served as Vice President Western Region of the New York Stock Exchange from January 2003 to October 2004. Prior to working for the New York Stock Exchange, Mr. Bhaumik was Senior Vice President of Comerica Bank, previously Imperial Bank, from April 1993 to January 2003. Mr. Bhaumik received a B.A. from San Jose State University and an M.B.A. from Santa Clara University. He serves on the advisory boards of Santa Clara University Leavey School of Business, Junior Achievement of Silicon Valley and the American Electronics Association-Bay Area council.

**Mark S. Denomme** joined our Company as a Managing Director in September 2006 and was promoted to Senior Managing Director and Group Head of Lower Middle Market in January 2010. Mr. Denomme has over 18 years of experience in financial services. Prior to joining the Company, Mr. Denomme was a Senior Vice President at Brown Brothers Harriman & Co., focusing on investments in middle market healthcare companies. From 2000 to 2006, Mr. Denomme was a Managing Director and co-founder of Consilium Partners, an investment banking firm focused on sell-side and buy-side engagements for middle market companies. From 1997 to 2000, Mr. Denomme was a Director in the Leveraged Finance group of BancBoston Robertson Stephens, focusing on originating loan syndication and high yield debt opportunities for the firm's technology and media clients. From 1988 to 1997, Mr. Denomme was a commercial lender with Bank of Boston focused on structured debt opportunities with technology and media-related companies. Mr. Denomme holds a BBA degree from the University of Michigan.

**Scott Gable** joined our Company in January 2010 as Chief Operating Officer. Mr. Gable most recently served as Head of Operations for East West Bank, formerly United Commercial Bank, in San Francisco. Previously, Mr. Gable was with Wells Fargo Bank from October 1997 to June 2008, during which time he held a number of roles, including Head of Marketing for Wholesale Banking, Head of Strategic Planning for Consumer Credit, Business Manager for the Personal Credit Management product group, and EVP of Consumer Credit Operations. From September 1987 to October 1997, Mr. Gable was with Booz Allen & Hamilton's San Francisco office, where he consulted to clients in the retail, packaged goods, entertainment, and transportation industries. He received an AB from Stanford University and an MBA from Harvard Business School.

**Scott Harvey** is a co-founder of our Company and has been our Chief Legal Officer and Secretary since December 2003. Mr. Harvey has been our Chief Compliance Officer since February 2005. Mr. Harvey has over 24 years of legal and business experience with leveraged finance and financing public and private technology-related companies. Since July 2002, and prior to co-founding the Company, Mr. Harvey was in a diversified private law practice. Previously, Mr. Harvey was Deputy General Counsel of Comdisco, Inc., a leading technology and financial services company, from January 1997 to July 2002. From 1991 to 1997, Mr. Harvey served as Vice President of Marketing, Administration & Alliances with Comdisco, Inc. and was Corporate Counsel from 1983 to 1991. Mr. Harvey received a B.S. in Agricultural Economics from the University of Missouri, a J.D. and LLM in taxation from The John Marshall Law School and an M.B.A. from Illinois Institute of Technology.

**David M. Lund** joined our Company in July 2005 as Vice President of Finance and Corporate Controller, and was promoted to our Chief Financial Officer in October 2006, and is our principle financial and accounting officer. He has over 27 years of experience in finance and accounting serving companies in the technology sector. Prior to joining Hercules, Mr. Lund served as the Corporate Controller of Rainmaker, Inc., from January 2005 to July 2005; as the Corporate Controller for Centrium Communications from January 2003 to February 2005; as the Chief Financial Officer and Vice President of Finance for APT Technologies from April 2002 to January 2003; as the

## **Table of Contents**

Chief Financial Officer and Vice President of Scion Photonics from February 2001 to March 2002. Mr. Lund also served in public accounting with Ernst & Young LLP and Grant Thornton LLP. He received a B.S. degree in Business Administration with an emphasis in Accounting from San Jose State University and a B.S. degree in Business Administration with an emphasis in Marketing from California State University, Chico.

**Parag I. Shah** joined our Company in November 2004 as Managing Director of Life Sciences and was promoted to Senior Managing Director in June 2006. During March 2008 Mr. Shah was promoted by our Board to the position of Life Science Group Head. Prior to joining Hercules, Mr. Shah served as Managing Director for Biogenesys Capital from April 2004 to November 2004. From April 2000 to April 2004, Mr. Shah was employed by Imperial Bank, where he served as a Senior Vice President in Imperial Bank's Life Sciences Group, beginning in October 2000, which was acquired by Comerica Bank in early 2001. Prior to working at Comerica Bank, Mr. Shah was an Assistant Vice President at Bank Boston from January 1997 to March 2000. Bank Boston was acquired by Fleet Bank in 1999. Mr. Shah completed his Masters degrees in Technology, Management and Policy as well as his Bachelor's degree in Molecular Biology at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). During his tenure at MIT, Mr. Shah conducted research at the Whitehead Institute for Biomedical Research and was chosen to serve on the Whitehead Institute's Board of Associates in 2003.

### **Board of Directors**

The number of directors is currently fixed at four directors.

Our Board of Directors is divided into three classes. One class holds office for a term expiring at the annual meeting of stockholders to be held in 2011, a second class holds office for a term expiring at the annual meeting of stockholders to be held in 2012, and a third class holds office initially for a term expiring at the annual meeting of stockholders to be held in 2010. Each director holds office for the term to which he or she is elected and until his or her successor is duly elected and qualifies. Messrs. Badavas and Chow's terms expire in 2011 and Mr. Woodward's term expires in 2012, and Mr. Henriquez's term expires in 2010. At each annual meeting of our stockholders, the successors to the class of directors whose terms expire at such meeting will be elected to hold office for a term expiring at the annual meeting of stockholders held in the third year following the year of their election and until their successors are duly elected and qualify.

### **Compensation of Directors**

In the past, the compensation committee has engaged Towers Watson, formerly known as Watson Wyatt Worldwide, Inc., (Towers Watson) to act as its compensation consultant to review the competitiveness and effectiveness of the Company's director compensation program relative to market practices within comparison group companies. Towers Watson last issued a report to the compensation committee regarding the director compensation program in late 2007 (the 2007 Report). In the 2007 Report, Towers Watson made certain recommendations regarding the mix of cash and equity compensation to be offered to the Company's directors, as well as the types of long-term incentives to be granted to the Company's directors. The compensation committee reviewed the 2007 Report when evaluating the director compensation program for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2009. For more information about the compensation information provided by Towers Watson, see Executive Compensation Compensation Discussion and Analysis below.

**Table of Contents**

The following table discloses the cash, equity awards and other compensation earned, paid or awarded, as the case may be, to each of our directors during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2009.

Name	Fees Earned or Paid in Cash (\$)	Fair Value of Restricted Stock Awards (\$) <sup>(2)</sup>	Option Awards (\$) <sup>(3)</sup>	All Other Compensation (\$) <sup>(5)</sup>	Total (\$)
Robert P. Badavas	\$ 154,338 <sup>(1)</sup>			\$ 6,122	\$ 160,460
Joseph W. Chow	\$ 113,000			\$ 6,122	\$ 119,122
Allyn C. Woodward, Jr.	\$ 129,500	\$ 42,450	\$ 15,520	\$ 8,345	\$ 195,815
Manuel A. Henriquez <sup>(4)</sup>					

- (1) Mr. Badavas earned \$132,801 and elected to receive a portion of the additional retainer fee as 3,334 shares of our common stock in lieu of cash. The total value of the shares issued to Mr. Badavas for services in fiscal 2009 was \$21,537.
- (2) During 2009, we granted Mr. Woodward a restricted stock award of 5,000 shares. See the discussion set forth under 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan below. The amount reflects the aggregate grant date fair value of stock awards computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. The grant date fair value of each restricted stock is measured based on the closing price of our common stock on the date of grant.
- (3) During 2009, we granted Mr. Woodward a stock option award of 15,000 shares. See the discussion set forth under 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan . The amount reflects the aggregate grant date fair value of option awards computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. The fair value of each option grant is estimated based on the fair market value on the date of grant and using the Black-Scholes-Merton option pricing model. For a more detailed discussion on the valuation model and assumptions used to calculate the fair value of our options, please refer to Note 7 to the consolidated financial statements contained in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2009.
- (4) As an employee director, Mr. Henriquez does not receive any compensation for his service as a director. The compensation Mr. Henriquez receives as CEO of the Company is disclosed in the Summary Compensation Table as set forth herein.
- (5) Represents dividends paid on unvested restricted stock awards during 2009.

As compensation for serving on our Board, each of our independent directors receives an annual fee of \$50,000 and the chairperson of each committee receives an additional \$15,000 annual fee. Each independent director also receives \$2,000 for each Board or committee meeting they attend, whether in person or telephonically. Employee directors and non-independent directors will not receive compensation for serving on the Board. In addition, we reimburse our directors for their reasonable out-of-pocket expenses incurred in attending Board meetings.

Directors do not receive any perquisites or other personal benefits from the Company.

Under current SEC rules and regulations applicable to business development companies ( BDC ), a BDC may not grant options or restricted stock to non-employee directors unless it receives exemptive relief from the SEC. The Company filed an exemptive relief request with the SEC to allow options and restricted stock to be issued to its non-employee directors, which was approved on October 10, 2007. On November 9, 2009 the Company filed a request with the SEC for exemptive relief that would permit its employees to exercise their stock options and restricted stock and pay any related income taxes using a cashless exercise program. There can be no assurance that such relief will be granted.

On June 21, 2007, the stockholders approved amendments to the 2004 Equity Incentive Plan (the 2004 Plan ) and the 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan (the 2006 Plan ) (collectively, the 2004 and 2006 Plans ) allowing for the grant of restricted stock. The 2004 and 2006 Plans limit the combined maximum amount of restricted stock that may be issued under both of the 2004 and 2006 Plans to 10% of the outstanding shares of the Company s common stock on the effective date of the 2004 and 2006 Plans plus 10% of the number of shares of common stock issued or delivered by the Company during the terms of the 2004 and 2006 Plans. See the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2009.



## **Table of Contents**

### **Board Leadership Structure**

#### ***Chairman and CEO***

The Board currently combines the role of Chairman of the Board with the role of chief executive officer, coupled with a lead independent director position to further strengthen the governance structure. The Board believes this provides an efficient and effective leadership model for the Company. Combining the Chairman and CEO roles fosters clear accountability, effective decision-making, and alignment on corporate strategy. Since our inception in 2005, Mr. Henriquez has served as both Chairman of the Board and CEO.

No single leadership model is right for all companies at all times. The Board recognizes that depending on the circumstances, other leadership models, such as a separate independent chairman of the board, might be appropriate. Accordingly, the Board periodically reviews its leadership structure.

Moreover, the Board believes that its governance practices provide adequate safeguards against any potential risks that might be associated with having a combined Chairman and CEO. Specifically:

Three of the four current directors of the Company are independent directors;

As required by Nasdaq rules, all of the members of the audit committee, compensation committee, and nominating and corporate governance committee are independent directors;

The Board and its committees regularly conduct scheduled meetings in executive session, out of the presence of Mr. Henriquez and other members of management;

The Board and its committees regularly conduct meetings specifically which include Mr. Henriquez;

The Board and its committees remain in close contact with, and receive reports on various aspects of the Company's management and enterprise risk directly from, the Company's senior management and independent auditors; and

The Board and its committees interact with employees of the Company outside the ranks of senior management.

#### ***Lead Independent Director***

The Board has instituted the lead independent director position to provide an additional measure of balance, ensure the Board's independence, and enhance its ability to fulfill its management oversight responsibilities. Allyn Woodward, Jr., the Chairman of the compensation committee and the nominating and corporate governance committee, currently serves as the lead independent director. The lead independent director:

Presides over all meetings of the directors at which the chairman is not present, including executive sessions of the independent directors;

Has the authority to call meetings of the independent directors;

Frequently consults with the Chairman and CEO about strategic policies;

Provides the Chairman and CEO with input regarding Board meetings;

Serves as a liaison between the Chairman and CEO and the independent directors; and

Otherwise assumes such responsibilities as may be assigned to him by the independent directors.

Having a combined Chairman and CEO, coupled with a substantial majority of independent, experienced directors, including a lead independent director with specified responsibilities on behalf of the independent directors, provides the right leadership structure for the Company and is best for the Company and its shareholders at this time.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Board of Directors Oversight of Risk**

While risk management is primarily the responsibility of the Company's management team, the Board is responsible for the overall supervision of the Company's risk management activities. The Board's oversight of the material risks faced by our Company occurs at both the full Board level and at the committee level.

The Board's audit committee has oversight responsibility not only for financial reporting with respect to the Company's major financial exposures and the steps management has taken to monitor and control such exposures, but also for the effectiveness of management's enterprise risk management process that monitors and manages key business risks facing the Company. In addition to the audit committee, the other committees of the Board consider the risks within their areas of responsibility. For example, the compensation committee considers the risks that may be implicated by our executive compensation program.

Management provides regular updates throughout the year to the Board regarding the management of the risks they oversee at each regular meeting of the Board. Also, the Board receives presentations throughout the year from various department and business group heads that include discussion of significant risks as necessary. Additionally, through dedicated sessions focusing entirely on corporate strategy, the full Board reviews in detail the Company's short and long-term strategies, including consideration of significant risks facing the Company and their potential impact.

### **Disclosure of Compensation Policies and Procedures as Related to Risk Management**

The Board believes that risks arising from our compensation policies and practices for our employees are not reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on the Company. The Compensation Discussion and Analysis section describes generally our compensation policies and practices that are applicable for executive and management employees. The Company uses common variable compensation designs across all employees of the Company with a significant focus on individual performance and contribution along with achievement of certain corporate objectives as generally described in this proxy statement.

In view of the current economic and financial environment, the compensation committee and our Board reviewed our compensation programs to assess whether any aspect of the programs would encourage any of our employees to take any unnecessary or inappropriate risks that could threaten the value of the Company. The compensation committee has designed our compensation programs to reward our employees for achieving annual profitability and long-term increase in stockholder value.

The Board recognizes that the pursuit of corporate objectives possibly leads to behaviors that could weaken the link between pay and performance, and, therefore, the correlation between the compensation delivered to employees and the return realized by stockholders. Accordingly, the compensation committee has designed our executive compensation program to mitigate these possibilities and to ensure that our compensation practices and decisions are consistent with our risk profile. These features include the following:

The financial performance objectives of our annual cash incentive program are the budgeted objectives that are reviewed and approved by the Board;

Bonus payouts are not based solely on corporate performance objectives, but also require achievement of individual performance objectives;

The financial opportunity in our long-term incentive program is best realized through long-term appreciation of our stock price, which mitigates excessive short-term risk-taking;

Annual cash bonuses are paid in one installment after the end of the fiscal year to which the bonus payout relates; and

The compensation committee and the Board have the final decision on all awards.



## **Table of Contents**

### **Committees of the Board**

The Board has established an audit committee, a valuation committee, a compensation committee, and a nominating and corporate governance committee. A brief description of each committee is included in this proxy and the charters of the audit, compensation, and nominating and corporate governance committees are available on the Investor Relations section of the Company's website at [www.htgc.com](http://www.htgc.com).

During 2009, the Board held 18 Board meetings, 20 committee meetings and acted by written consent. All of the directors attended at least 75% of the Board meetings and at least 75% of the respective committee meetings on which they serve. Each director makes a diligent effort to attend all Board and committee meetings, as well as the Annual Meeting of Stockholders. Each of the directors, except for one, attended the Company's 2009 Annual Meeting of Stockholders in person.

*Audit Committee.* Our Board has established an audit committee. The audit committee is comprised of Messrs. Badavas, Chow and Woodward, each of whom is an independent director and satisfies the independence requirements for purposes of the rules promulgated by the Nasdaq Stock Market and the requirements to be a non-interested director as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act. Mr. Badavas currently serves as chairman of the audit committee and is an audit committee financial expert as defined under the Nasdaq Stock Market rules. The audit committee is responsible for approving our independent accountants, reviewing with our independent accountants the plans and results of the audit engagement, approving professional services provided by our independent accountants, reviewing the independence of our independent accountants and reviewing the adequacy of our internal accounting controls. During the last fiscal year, the audit committee held seven meetings and acted by written consent.

*Valuation Committee.* Our Board has established a valuation committee. The valuation committee is comprised of Messrs. Badavas, Chow and Woodward, each of whom is an independent director and satisfies the independence requirements for purposes of the rules promulgated by the Nasdaq Stock Market and the requirements to be a non-interested director as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act. Mr. Chow currently serves as Chairman of the valuation committee. The valuation committee is responsible for reviewing and recommending to the full Board the fair value of debt and equity securities in accordance with established valuation procedures. The valuation committee may utilize the services of an independent valuation firm in arriving at fair value of these securities. During the last fiscal year, the valuation committee held six meetings.

*Compensation Committee.* Our Board has established a compensation committee. The compensation committee is comprised of Messrs. Badavas, Chow and Woodward, each of whom is an independent director and satisfies the independence requirements for purposes of the rules promulgated by the Nasdaq Stock Market and the requirements to be a non-interested director as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act. Mr. Woodward currently serves as Chairman of the compensation committee. The compensation committee determines compensation for our executive officers, in addition to administering our 2004 Plan and the 2006 Plan. During the last fiscal year, the compensation committee held four meetings and acted by written consent.

*Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee.* Our Board has established a nominating and corporate governance committee. The nominating and corporate governance committee is comprised of Messrs. Badavas, Chow and Woodward, each of whom is an independent director and satisfies the independence requirements for purposes of the rules promulgated by the Nasdaq Stock Market and the requirements to be a non-interested director as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act. Mr. Woodward currently serves as Chairman of the nominating and corporate governance committee. The nominating and corporate governance committee will nominate to the Board for consideration candidates for election as directors to the Board. During the last fiscal year, the nominating and corporate governance committee held three meetings.

The nominating and corporate governance committee will consider qualified director nominees recommended by stockholders when such recommendations are submitted in accordance with the Company's

## **Table of Contents**

bylaws and any other applicable law, rule or regulation regarding director nominations. When submitting a nomination to the Company for consideration, a stockholder must provide certain information that would be required under applicable SEC rules, including the following minimum information for each director nominee: full name, age, and address; class, series and number of shares of stock of the Company beneficially owned by the nominee, if any; the date such shares were acquired and the investment intent of such acquisition; whether such stockholder believes the individual is an interested person of the Company, as defined in the 1940 Act; and all other information required to be disclosed in solicitations of proxies for election of directors in an election contest or is otherwise required. To date, the Company has not received any recommendations from stockholders requesting consideration of a candidate for inclusion among the committee's slate of nominees in the Company's proxy statement. See Submission of Stockholder Proposals.

In evaluating director nominees, the nominating and corporate governance committee considers the following factors:

the appropriate size and the diversity of the Company's Board;

whether or not the nominee is an interested person of the Company as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act;

the needs of the Company with respect to the particular talents and experience of its directors;

the knowledge, skills and experience of nominees in light of prevailing business conditions and the knowledge, skills and experience already possessed by other members of the Board;

experience with accounting rules and practices;

the desire to balance the considerable benefit of continuity with the periodic injection of the fresh perspective provided by new members; and

all applicable laws, rules, regulations, and listing standards.

The nominating and corporate governance committee identifies nominees by first evaluating the current members of the Board willing to continue in service. Current members of the Board with skills and experience that are relevant to the Company's business and who are willing to continue in service are considered for re-nomination, balancing the value of continuity of service by existing members of the Board with that of obtaining a new perspective. If any member of the Board does not wish to continue in service or if the nominating and corporate governance committee or the Board decides not to re-nominate a member for re-election, or if the nominating and corporate governance committee recommends to expand the size of the Board, the nominating and corporate governance committee identifies the desired skills and experience of a new nominee in light of the criteria above. Current members of the nominating and corporate governance committee and the Board provide suggestions as to individuals meeting the criteria of the nominating and corporate governance committee. Consultants may also be engaged to assist in identifying qualified individuals.

### **Communication with the Board**

Stockholders with questions about the Company are encouraged to contact Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc.'s Investor Relations department at (650) 289-3060. However, if stockholders believe that their questions have not been addressed, they may communicate with the Company's Board by sending their communications to Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc., c/o Scott Harvey, Chief Legal Officer, 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301. All stockholder communications received in this manner will be delivered to one or more members of the Board.



## **Table of Contents**

### **Code of Ethics**

Our code of ethics, which is signed by directors and executives of the Company, requires that directors and executive officers avoid any conflict, or the appearance of a conflict, between an individual's personal interests and the interests of the Company. Pursuant to the code of ethics which is available on our website at [www.htgc.com](http://www.htgc.com), each director and executive officer must disclose any conflicts of interest, or actions or relationships that might give rise to a conflict, to the audit committee. Certain actions or relationships that might give rise to a conflict of interest are reviewed and approved by the Board.

### **Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation**

All members of the compensation committee are independent directors and none of the members are present or past employees of the Company. No member of the compensation committee: (i) has had any relationship with the Company requiring disclosure under Item 404 of Regulation S-K under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; or (ii) is an executive officer of another entity, at which one of our executive officers serves on the Board.

### **Executive Compensation**

#### **Compensation Discussion and Analysis**

##### ***Overview of the Compensation Program***

The compensation committee oversees the Company's compensation policies and programs, approves the compensation of our executive officers and administers our equity incentive programs. This compensation discussion and analysis presents the details regarding compensation approved by the compensation committee and paid for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2009 to the named executive officers (NEOs) presented below and included in the summary compensation table:

Manuel A. Henriquez, Chief Executive Officer

David M. Lund, Chief Financial Officer

Scott Harvey, Chief Legal Officer

Samir Bhaumik, Senior Managing Director and Technology Group Head

Parag I. Shah, Senior Managing Director and Life Science Group Head

In addition, this compensation discussion and analysis explains the compensation committee's rationale and considerations that led to the executive compensation decisions affecting the Company's NEOs.

##### ***Compensation Philosophy***

The compensation and benefit programs of the Company adopted by our compensation committee are designed with the goal of providing compensation that is fair, reasonable and competitive and are intended to help us align the compensation paid to our NEOs with corporate and executive performance goals that have been established to achieve both our short-term and long-term objectives. The key elements of our compensation philosophy include:



designing compensation programs that enable us to attract and retain the best talent in the industries in which we compete;

using long-term equity retention and incentive awards to align employee and stockholder interests;

aligning executive compensation packages with the Company's performance; and

ensuring that our compensation program complies with the requirements of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

## **Table of Contents**

We have designed compensation programs based on the following:

*Achievement of Corporate Objectives and Executive Performance Factors* We believe that the best way to align compensation with the interests of our stockholders is to link executive compensation with individual performance and contribution along with the achievements of certain corporate objectives. The compensation committee determines executive compensation consistent with the achievement of certain corporate objectives and executive performance factors that have been established to achieve short-term and long-term objectives of the Company.

*Discretionary Annual Bonus Pool* Over the course of the year, the compensation committee, together with input from our CEO, develops a range of amounts likely to be available for the discretionary annual cash bonus pool. The range for this bonus pool is dependent upon the Company's current financial outlook and executive performance contributing to achieving our corporate objectives, does not utilize specified targets and is subject to the sole discretion of the compensation committee. This range is further refined during our third and fourth fiscal quarters into a specified pool to be used for discretionary annual cash bonuses for our NEOs. If executive performance exceeds expectation and performance goals established during the year, compensation levels for the NEOs may exceed the specified pool amount at the discretion of our compensation committee. If executive performance falls below expectations, compensation levels may fall below the specified pool amount.

*Competitiveness and Market Alignment* Our compensation and benefits programs are designed to be competitive with those provided by companies with whom we compete for investment professionals and to be sufficient to attract and retain the best talent for top performers within the industries in which we compete. We compete for talent with venture capital funds, private equity firms, mezzanine lenders, hedge funds and other specialty finance companies including certain specialized commercial banks. Thus, we believe that our employee compensation benefit plans should be designed to be competitive in the businesses in which we compete sufficient to attract and retain talent. Our benefit programs, which include general health and welfare benefits, consisting of life, long-term and short-term disability, health, dental, vision insurance benefits and the opportunity to participate in our defined contribution 401(k) plan, are designed to provide competitive benefits and are not based on performance. As part of its annual review process, the compensation committee reviews the competitiveness of the Company's current compensation levels of its NEOs relative to that of our comparative group companies identified herein with a third-party compensation consultant.

*Alignment with Requirements of the 1940 Act* Our compensation program must align with the requirements of the 1940 Act, which imposes certain limitations on the structure of a BDC's compensation program. For example, the 1940 Act prohibits a BDC from maintaining an incentive stock option award plan and a profit sharing arrangement simultaneously. As a result, if a BDC has an incentive stock option award plan, such as we do, it is prohibited from using specific measurements commonly utilized by non-BDC companies common as a form of compensation or a profit sharing arrangement such as a carried interest formula, a common form of compensation in the private equity industry. These limitations and other similar restrictions imposed by the 1940 Act limit the compensation arrangements that we can utilize in order to attract and retain our NEOs.

### ***Components of Total Compensation***

The compensation committee determined that the compensation packages for 2009 for our NEOs should consist of the following three key components:

annual base salary;

annual cash bonus based on corporate objectives and executive performance factors; and

long-term equity incentive and retention awards in the form of stock option and/or restricted stock awards.



## **Table of Contents**

### ***Annual Base Salary***

Base salary is designed to provide a minimum, fixed level of cash compensation to our NEOs in order to attract and retain experienced executive officers who can drive the achievement of our goals and objectives. While our NEOs' initial base salaries are determined by an assessment of competitive market levels for comparable experience and responsibilities, the performance factors used in determining changes in base salary include individual performance, changes in role and/or responsibility and changes in the market environment.

### ***Annual Cash Bonus***

The annual cash bonus is designed to reward our NEOs that have achieved certain corporate objectives and executive performance factors. The amount of the annual cash bonus is determined by the compensation committee on a discretionary basis and is dependent on the achievement of certain executive performance factors, as described herein under the heading "Assessment of Corporate Performance" during the year. The compensation committee established these performance factors because it believes they are related to our achievement of both short-term and long-term corporate objectives and the creation of stockholder value.

### ***Long-Term Equity Incentive and Retention Awards***

The compensation committee's principal goals in awarding incentive stock options and/or restricted stock are to retain executive officers as well as align each NEO's interests with our success and the long-term financial interests of its stockholders by linking a portion of the NEO's compensation with the performance of the Company and the value delivered to stockholders. The compensation committee evaluates a number of criteria, including the past service of each NEO, the present and potential performance contributions of such NEO to our success, years of service, position, and such other factors as the compensation committee believes to be relevant in connection with accomplishing the purposes of the long-term goals of the Company. The compensation committee neither assigns a formula, nor assigns specific weights to any of these factors when making its determination of the NEOs' long-term incentive awards. The compensation committee awards incentive stock options and/or restricted stock on a subjective basis, and such awards depend in each case on the performance of the NEO under consideration, and in the case of new hires, on their potential performance.

Option awards under the 2004 Plan are generally awarded upon initial employment and on an annual basis thereafter. Options generally vest, subject to continued employment, one-third after one year of the date of grant and ratably over the succeeding 24 months.

In May 2007, we received SEC exemptive relief, and our stockholders approved amendments to the 2004 and 2006 Plans, permitting us to grant restricted stock awards. Restricted stock awards granted under the 2004 Plan were previously awarded annually and vest subject to continued employment one-fourth each year over a four year period beginning with the first anniversary of such grant. In 2009 and 2010, restricted stock awards vest subject to continued employment one-fourth on the one year anniversary of the date of grant and ratably over the succeeding 36 months.

The 2004 and 2006 Plans limit the combined maximum amount of restricted stock that may be issued under both 2004 and 2006 Plans to 10% of the outstanding shares of our stock on the effective date of the 2004 and 2006 Plans plus 10% of the number of shares of stock issued or delivered by our Company during the terms of the 2004 and 2006 Plans. The approved amendments further specify that no one person will be granted awards of restricted stock relating to more than 25% of the shares available for issuance under the 2004 Plan. Further, the amount of voting securities that would result from the exercise of all our outstanding warrants, options and rights, together with any restricted stock issued pursuant to the 2004 and 2006 Plans, at the time of issuance will not exceed 25% of our outstanding voting securities, except that if the amount of voting securities that would result from such exercise of all of our outstanding warrants, options and rights issued to our directors and executive officers, together with any restricted stock issued pursuant to the 2004 and 2006 Plans, would exceed

## **Table of Contents**

15% of our outstanding voting securities, then the total amount of voting securities that would result from the exercise of all outstanding warrants, options and rights, together with any restricted stock issued pursuant to the 2004 and 2006 Plans, at the time of issuance will not exceed 20% of our outstanding voting securities. Eligibility includes all of our NEOs. Each grant of restricted stock under the 2004 Plan to our NEOs will contain such terms and conditions, including consideration and vesting, as our Board deems appropriate and as allowed for within the provisions of the 2004 Plan. We believe that by having two forms of long term equity incentive rewards we are able to reward stockholder value creation in different ways. Stock options have exercise prices equal to the market price of our common stock on the date of the grant and reward employees only if our stock price increases. Restricted stock, although affected by both stock price increases and decreases, maintains value during periods of market volatility.

### ***Benefits and Perquisites***

Our NEOs receive the same benefits and perquisites as other full-time employees. Our benefit program is designed to provide competitive benefits and is not based on performance. Other than the benefits described below, our NEOs do not receive any other benefits, including retirement benefits, or perquisites from the Company. Our NEOs and other full-time employees receive general health and welfare benefits, which consist of life, long-term and short-term disability, health, dental, vision insurance benefits and the opportunity to participate in our defined contribution 401(k) plan. During 2009, our 401(k) plan provided for a match of contributions by the Company for up to \$6,500 per full-time employee.

### ***Tax and Accounting Implications***

*Stock-Based Compensation.* We account for stock-based compensation, including options and restricted shares granted pursuant to our 2004 and 2006 Plans in accordance with the requirements of FASB ASC Topic 718. Under the FASB ASC Topic 718, we estimate the fair value of our option awards at the date of grant using the Black-Scholes-Merton option-pricing model, which requires the use of certain subjective assumptions. The most significant of these assumptions are our estimates on the expected term, volatility and forfeiture rates of the awards. Forfeitures are not estimated due to our limited history but are reversed in the period in which forfeiture occurs. As required under the accounting rules, we review our valuation assumptions at each grant date and, as a result, are likely to change our valuation assumptions used to value stock-based awards granted in future periods. We estimate the fair value of our restricted stock awards based on grant date market closing price.

*Deductibility of Executive Compensation.* When analyzing both total compensation and individual elements of compensation paid to our NEOs, the compensation committee considers the income tax consequences to the Company of its compensation policies and procedures. The compensation committee intends to balance its objective of providing compensation to our NEOs that is fair, reasonable, and competitive with the Company's capability to take an immediate compensation expense deduction. The Board believes that the best interests of the Company and its stockholders are served by executive compensation programs that encourage and promote the Company's principal compensation philosophy, enhancement of stockholder value, and permit the compensation committee to exercise discretion in the design and implementation of compensation packages. Accordingly, the Company may from time to time pay compensation to its NEOs that may not be fully tax deductible. Stock options granted under our stock plan generally intended to qualify as performance-based compensation under Section 162(m) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the Code) may exceed the deductibility of non-performance-based compensation paid to certain covered employees whose compensation exceeds \$1 million in any year. Also, the restricted stock awards we may grant or have granted to date are not eligible for this deduction. We will continue to review the Company's executive compensation plans periodically to determine what changes, if any, should be made as a result of the limitation on deductibility.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Establishing Compensation Levels**

#### ***Role of the Compensation Committee***

The compensation committee is comprised entirely of independent directors who are also non-employee directors as defined in Rule 16b-3 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, independent directors as defined by the Nasdaq Stock Market rules, and are not interested persons of our Company, as defined by Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act. The compensation committee currently consists of Messrs. Woodward, Badavas and Chow.

The compensation committee operates pursuant to a charter that sets forth the mission of the compensation committee and its specific goals and responsibilities. A key component of the compensation committee's goals and responsibilities is to evaluate and make recommendations to the Board regarding the compensation of the NEOs of the Company, and to review their performance relative to their compensation to assure that they are compensated effectively in a manner consistent with the compensation philosophy discussed above. In addition, the compensation committee evaluates and makes recommendations to the Board regarding the compensation of the directors for their services. Annually, the compensation committee:

- (i) reviews and approves corporate goals and objectives relevant to the NEOs' total compensation, evaluates the CEO's performance to ensure that the compensation program is designed to achieve the objective of rewarding our CEO appropriately for his contributions to corporate performance;
- (ii) reviews the CEO's evaluation of the other NEOs' performance to ensure that the compensation program is designed to achieve the objectives of rewarding our other NEOs appropriately for their contributions to corporate performance;
- (iii) determines and approves the compensation paid to the Company's CEO; and
- (iv) together with our CEO's input, reviews and approves the compensation of the other NEOs.

Periodically, the compensation committee reviews our incentive compensation plans and perquisites, if any, to ensure that such plans are consistent with our goals and corporate objectives and appropriately align our NEOs' interests with those of the Company's stockholders and makes recommendations to the Board regarding adoption of new employee incentive compensation plans and equity-based plans. The compensation committee administers our stock incentive arrangements with our NEOs. The compensation committee may not delegate its responsibilities discussed above.

#### ***Role of Management***

The key member of management involved in the compensation process is our CEO, Manuel A. Henriquez. Mr. Henriquez identifies and proposes certain corporate and executive performance factors that have been established to achieve short-term and long-term corporate objectives that are used by the compensation committee to determine total compensation. Over the course of the year, our CEO provides inputs to the compensation committee with his recommendations for the funding level for our discretionary annual cash bonus pool as it applies to our NEOs, other than himself. These recommendations are based upon his evaluation of our current financial outlook and the performance of our NEOs, including their contributions to achieving our short-term and long-term corporate objectives as they relate to each NEO's specific roles and responsibilities within our Company. Mr. Henriquez's recommendations are presented to the compensation committee for their review and approval, but he is not a member of the compensation committee and is not involved in the deliberations of the compensation committee.

The compensation committee makes all decisions with respect to compensation of all of our NEOs, including the allocation between long-term and current compensation, subject to review by the full Board. Our compensation committee meets outside of the presence of our CEO when reviewing and determining his compensation.

**Table of Contents**

***Role of the Compensation Consultant***

The compensation committee has the authority from the Board of Directors for the appointment, compensation and oversight of the Company's outside compensation consultant. The compensation committee engages a compensation consultant every other year to assist the compensation committee with its responsibilities related to the Company's executive compensation programs. In late 2008, the compensation committee engaged Towers Watson, an independent compensation consultant, to provide summary compensation information regarding the compensation to be awarded to the Company.